Canon

Color imageCLASS
MF8380Cdw/MF8080Cw

Basic Operation Guide

- Network Setting Procedure
- Security Functions
- Searching in Detail

➔ See the e-Manual.
   User Software CD-ROM

- Searching the Installation and Connection Procedure

➔ See the Starter Guide.

➔ Be sure to read the manual before using the machine.
Keep the manual for future reference.

There are a variety of copy functions that are explained in later pages of this manual as well as in the e-Manual. You can enlarge or reduce copies as well as copy multiple documents onto one sheet. Additionally, you can erase the background of the document or adjust the density and image quality before copying.

Below is a quick overview of highlighted copy features that you can utilize in your everyday use.

Adjusting the Image Quality According to the Document ● ● For details, see "Copying" from p. 3-1.

● **Image Quality Adjustment**

You can adjust the image quality according to the types of documents.
A correct selection is necessary for the optimal reproduction of the document.

<Text/Photo/Map>   <Printed Image>   <Text>

● **Density Adjustment**

You can adjust the density of copies according to the document.

<Light>   <Dark>

● **Background Adjustment**

You can copy with the background color of the document erased.
You can also adjust the background for each color.

● **Color Adjustment**

You can adjust the density for each color.

Various Copy Functions ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● For details, see "Copying" from p. 3-1.

● **Enlarged/Reduced Copies**

You can enlarge or reduce standard size documents to copy on standard size paper or specify the copy ratio in percentage.

● **2-Sided Copying (MF8380Cdw Only)**

You can copy 1-sided documents on both sides of paper.

● **Collating**

You can sort copies into sets arranged in page order.

● **Reduced Layout**

You can reduce multiple documents to copy them onto one sheet.

2 on 1

4 on 1

● **Copying ID Card**

You can make a copy of a 2-sided card onto one side of paper.

● **Paper Save Copy**

Press the [Paper Save Copy] key, and you can select from some types of copying.

There are a variety of print functions that are explained in later pages of this manual as well as in the e-Manual. You can enlarge or reduce documents, print multiple-page data onto one sheet, and perform 2-sided printing. Also you can print from a USB memory connected to the machine as well as from a computer.
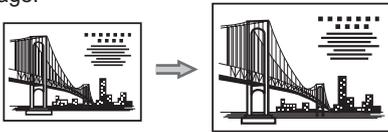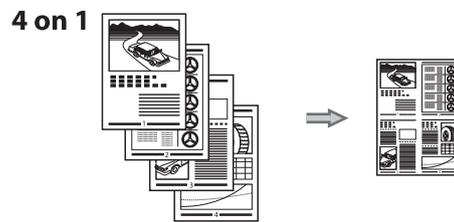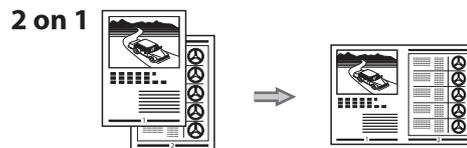
Below is a quick overview of highlighted print features that you can utilize in your everyday use.

● Printing documents from a computer ● ● ● ● For details, see "Printing from a Computer" from p. 4-1.

Various Printing Functions

● **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

You can enlarge or reduce standard size documents to print on standard size paper or specify the ratio in percentage.

● **2-Sided Printing (MF8380Cdw Only)**

You can print on both sides of paper.

● **Reduced Layout**

You can reduce multiple documents to print them onto one sheet.

2 on 1

4 on 1

Miscellaneous Printing Functions

● **Booklet Printing (MF8380Cdw Only)**

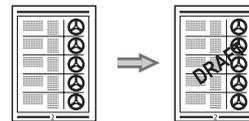Booklet printing allows you to make a booklet by folding printouts in half.

● **Poster Printing**

You can magnify and divide a single page image to print it out on multiple sheets of paper. You can make one large poster by joining these printouts together.

● **Watermark Printing**

You can superimpose watermarks (such as [COPY] and [DRAFT]) over the documents created by an application.

● **Switching between Color and B&W Printing**

You can print color documents in black and white.
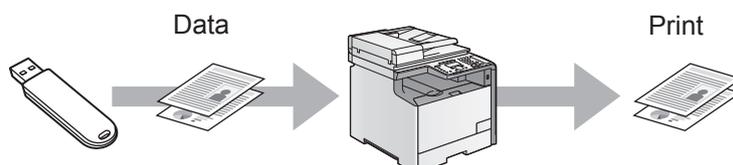
● **Displaying a Preview before Printing**

You can check the printout result on a computer display.

● **Selecting a "Profile"**

Some printer driver settings are provided as "Profiles" beforehand.
You can perform printing which suits your needs only by selecting a "Profile."

● Printing documents from a USB memory (Media printing) ● For details, see "Printing" in the e-Manual.

You can directly print the data loaded into the USB memory which has been connected to the machine.

Data

Print

Quick View- Perform Useful Tasks

| Copy | Print | **Fax** | Scan | Network Settings & Remote UI |

There are a variety of fax functions that are explained in later pages of this manual as well as in the e-Manual. The machine is equipped with a G3 fax, as well as the PC function which can send a document from a computer directly, which reduces paper costs.

Below is a quick overview of highlighted fax features that you can utilize in your everyday use.

● Sending a Document Directly from a Computer (PC Fax) ● ● ● For details, see "Fax" in the 📖 e-Manual.

You can send a document or image created in an application as a fax directly using the fax driver from a computer on a network. Because you do not need to print the document, you can reduce the paper cost as well as send a clear document which has little dirt or blur.

* You need to install the fax driver in a computer.

* If you are a Macintosh user, see the following.

・ To install the Fax Driver
　→ Starter Guide or Mac Fax Driver Installation Guide
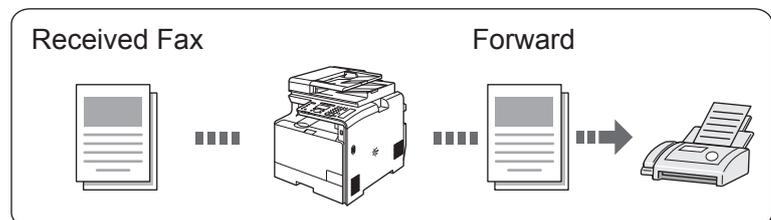・ To view how to use each function
　→ Fax Driver's Help

To view how to display Mac Fax Driver Installation Guide or Fax Driver's Help, see "For Macintosh Users" (→P.11-5).

You can import the address book using the fax driver, enabling you to send a fax to a destination easily without mistakes.

You can also create a cover sheet for when sending a fax.

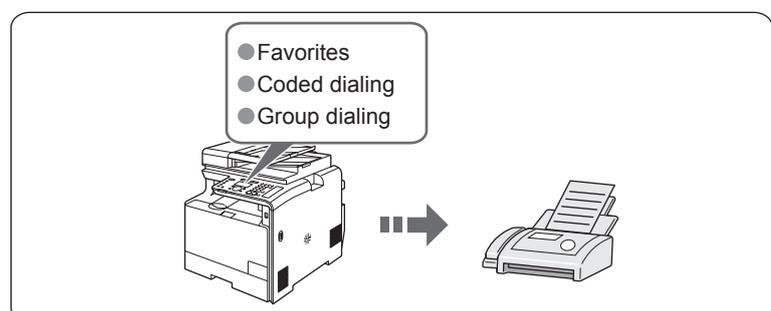Data is created in a computer　　Send

▲ Fax driver screen

● Forwarding the Received Fax ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● For details, see "Using the Fax Functions" from p. 6-1.

You can forward received faxes stored in the memory to a specified destination.

Received Fax　　　　　　Forward

● Registering Destinations in the Address Book ● ● For details, see "Registering Destinations in the Address Book" from p. 5-1.

By registering destinations for sending faxes beforehand, you can save many steps to enter the destinations when sending the documents.
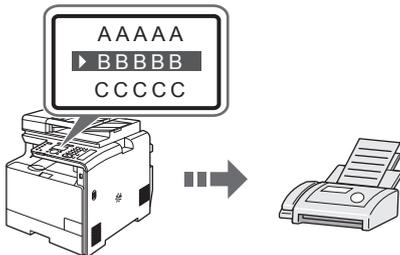
● Favorites
● Coded dialing
● Group dialing

iv

| Copy | Print | **Fax** | Scan | Network Settings & Remote UI |

Various Sending/Receiving Functions ● ● ● For details, see "Using the Fax Functions" from p. 6-1.

Various Sending Functions

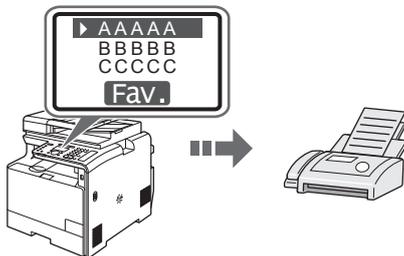#### Various Methods for Specifying a Destination

You can register fax destinations in the address book. You can specify the destinations using various methods, enabling you to send documents quickly and easily.
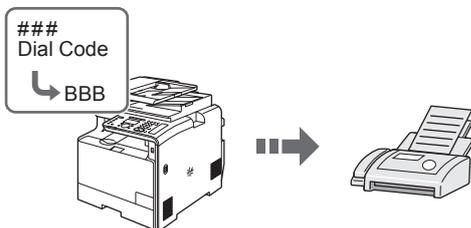
● **Destination search**

● **Favorites**

You can register up to 19 destinations in the Favorites list. The destinations registered in the Favorites list are displayed in the Favorites list by selecting the <Fav.> tab in the address book display and can be found easily when you specify the destination.
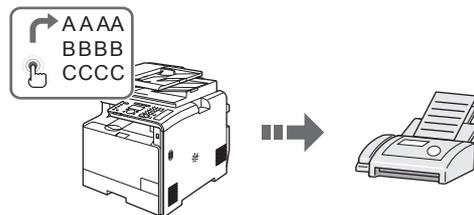

● **Coded dial**

You can register up to 181 destinations in coded dial codes. Once the destinations have been registered, you can press the appropriate coded dial code to select the destination.
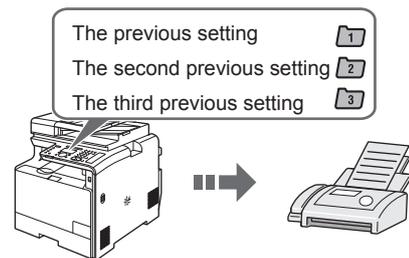

● **Group dialing**

You can specify up to 199 registered destinations as a group address in the Favorites list and coded dial codes. Group addresses need to be registered in unused Favorites or coded dial codes. All you need to do is to select a key or code to specify group addresses.
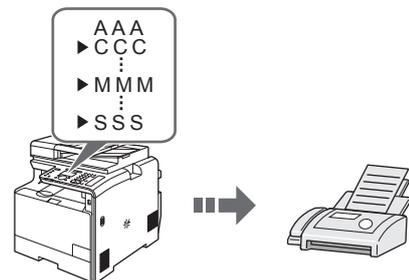

● **Specifying from the sending history**

The previous setting
The second previous setting
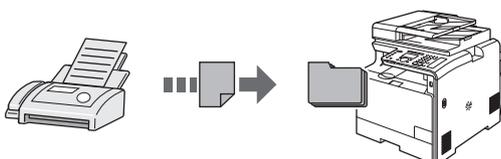The third previous setting

● **Sequential broadcast**

By scanning a document once, you can send the same document to multiple destinations.
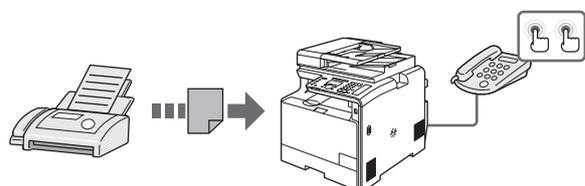

Various Receiving Functions

● **Receiving in the Memory**

Received documents are normally printed immediately. However, you can store the documents temporarily in the memory without printing.
You can print the stored documents at any time. If you do not need them, you can delete them, saving paper to be used.

● **Remote Receiving**

If an external telephone is connected, you can switch to the fax receiving mode immediately by dialing the ID number for fax receiving using the dial buttons of the telephone during a phone call.

There are a variety of scan functions that are explained in later pages of this manual as well as in the e-Manual. You can easily save scanned documents into your computer or a USB memory, and also send them to your e-mail application or a file server directly from the machine.

Below is a quick overview of highlighted scan features that you can utilize in your everyday use.

● Saving in a Computer

There are two methods for saving scanned documents in a computer.

Saving the Documents Using the Operation Panel of the Machine

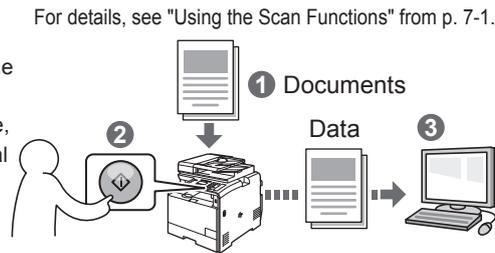For details, see "Using the Scan Functions" from p. 7-1.

You can easily save scanned documents in a computer only by operating the operation panel of the machine.

Various scanning settings have been prepared for your purposes. Therefore, you can create a "Searchable PDF*" file, which can be used for text retrieval or as text data, without specifying special settings.

* If you are using Macintosh, you cannot create "Searchable PDF."

●**Use the Shortcut Keys for Scanning**

For quicker selection of destinations and/or settings, register them beforehand into the keys on the operation panel.

Saving the Documents Using Operations from a Computer

For details, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.

●**Scanning with the MF Toolbox***

Scanning is performed by operating the software supplied with the machine.

* MF Toolbox for Macintosh and MF Toolbox for Windows may be different in some features.
  For details, see the Mac Scanner Driver Guide.

●**Scanning from an Application**

Scanning is performed using your application.
This allows you to open the scanned data as is in your application.

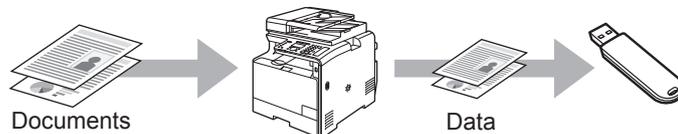●**Scanning with the WIA Driver (Windows XP/Vista/7 Only)**

Scanning is performed using the driver system supplied with Windows operating systems. There are various scanning methods.

・Scanning from the [Scanner and Camera Wizard] dialog box
・Scanning from the [Windows Fax and Scan] dialog box
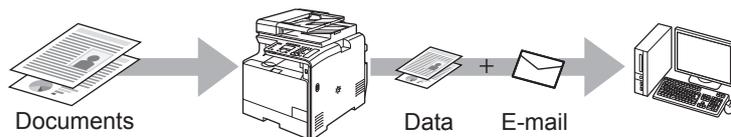・Scanning from Windows Photo Gallery
・Scanning from an Application

● Saving in a USB Memory ●●●● For details, see "Using the Scan Functions" from p. 7-1.

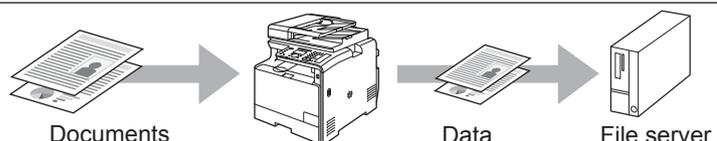You can save scanned documents in a USB memory connected to the machine.

Documents   Data

● Emailing Scanned Documents ●●● For details, see "Using the Scan Functions" from p. 7-1.

You can send scanned documents to your e-mail application. (MF8380Cdw Only)

Documents   Data   E-mail

● Sending Scanned Documents to a File Server ●● For details, see "Using the Scan Functions" from p. 7-1.

You can send scanned documents to a file server. (MF8380Cdw Only)

Documents   Data   File server

Copy	Print	Fax	Scan	**Network Settings & Remote UI**

There are a variety of network settings that are explained in the e-Manual. Since the machine has a built-in network board, you can print, fax, and scan from a computer via a network. You can also perform efficient management by configuring the machine using the Remote UI.

Below is a quick overview of highlighted network-related settings that you can utilize.

● Various Network Settings ● ● ● For details, see "Network Settings" in the ▤ e-Manual.

Basic Network Settings

● Setting the IP address (IPv4)
- IP address
- Subnet mask
- Gateway address

▼ As needed

● Setting the IP address (IPv6)

Configuration for communicating with a computer

● Configuring the machine
- LPD, RAW, WSD

▼ As needed

● Configuring a computer
- Port settings
- Sharing settings for the printer

Miscellaneous Settings

● Communication mode/ Communication speed
● Waiting time for connection
● DNS
● WINS server

● Security Settings ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● For details, see "Security" in the ▤ e-Manual.

Administration Settings

● System administrator settings
- Manager ID/PIN
● Device information
- Device name/Installation site
● Dept. ID management
- Department ID/PIN/ Function restriction
- Unknown ID job management
● Remote UI On/Off

Restricting Connection to a Network or Computer

● IP address filtering
● MAC address filtering
● SNMP settings
● Allowing the HTTP communication
● Setting a port number
● Dedicated port settings
● Restricting USB connection
● Restricting job operations

Printing Functions/Restricting Destination Operations/Sending Functions

● Secure printing
● Address book PIN
● Restricting new destinations
● Restricting the PC fax
● Restricting sending from history
● Fax number confirmation re-entry
● Restricting sequential broadcast
● Restricting displaying the job history

● Configuring Using the Remote UI ● ● ● For details, see "Setting and Managing from Computer" in the ▤ e-Manual.

Remote UI Functions

● Checking the status and information of the machine
● Job Management
● Preferences
● Function settings
● System settings
● Address book management

How to start the Remote UI

☞ e-Manual → Starting the Remote UI

1 Start the web browser.

2 Enter "http://<the IP address of the machine>/" in the address field, and then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

3 Log on to the Remote UI.

(1) Select [System Manager Mode] or [End-User Mode].
(2) For [System Manager Mode], enter [System Manager ID] and [System Manager PIN].
For [End-User Mode], enter [User Name].
(3) Click [Log in].

Contents

Before Using the Machine   1-1

Document and Paper Handling   2-1

Copying   3-1

Printing from a Computer   4-1

Registering Destinations in the Address Book   5-1

Using the Fax Functions   6-1

Using the Scan Functions 7-1

Maintenance 8-1

Troubleshooting 9-1

Registering/Setting the Various Functions 10-1

Appendix 11-1

Manuals for the Machine

Read this manual first.

This manual describes the settings for setting up the machine and installing the software. Be sure to read this manual before using the machine.

Starter Guide

- Preface
- Installing the Machine
- Configuring and Connecting the Fax
- Connecting to a Computer and Installing the Drivers
- Appendix

Read this manual with the Starter Guide.

This manual describes Wireless LAN setup procedures and causes and solutions for troubles you might face during setup. Be sure to read this manual when connecting the machine to a wireless LAN.

Wireless LAN Setting Guide

- Setting the wireless LAN
- Troubleshooting
- Appendix

Read this manual next.

This manual describes the basic use of the machine.

Basic Operation Guide   **This manual**

- Before Using the Machine
- Document and Paper Handling
- Copying
- Printing from a Computer
- Registering Destinations in the Address Book
- Using the Fax Functions
- Using the Scan Functions
- Maintenance
- Troubleshooting
- Registering/Setting the Various Functions
- Appendix

Read this manual for how to set Send features.

This manual describes setting for sending scanned data to E-mail and/or file servers.

Send Setting Guide (MF8380Cdw Only)

   * The Send Setting Guide is included in the User Software CD-ROM.

- Send to E-mail Function
- Store to Shared Folder Function

Read the desired chapter to suit your needs.

The e-Manual is categorized by subject to find desired information easily.

e-Manual   * The e-Manual is included in the User Software CD-ROM.

- Important Safety Instructions
- Basic Operation
- Copy
- Fax *1
- Print *1
- Scan *1
- Network Settings
- Security
- Setting and Managing from Computer
- Troubleshooting
- Maintenance
- Setting Menu List
- Specifications

*1 If you are using Macintosh, see the following Driver Guides or Help for more details on these functions. You can find the driver guides in the following locations on the User Software CD-ROM.
- Mac UFR II Printer Driver Installation Guide → [Documents] - [Print] - [Guide] - [index. html]
- Mac Fax Driver Installation Guide → [Documents] - [FAX] - [Guide] - [index.html]
- Mac Scanner Driver Guide → [Documents] - [Scan] - [Guide] - [index.html]

● Available Features

The machine offers the following features.

○ : available

— : not available

	Copy (1-sided)	Copy (2-sided)	Print (1-sided)	Print (2-sided)	Fax (PC Fax)	Scan	Send to E-mail/ Store to Shared Folder	Remote UI	ADF (1-sided)	ADF (2-sided)	Wireless LAN
MF8380Cdw	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
MF8080Cw	○	—	○	—	○	○	—	○	○	—	○

● How to Use This Manual

Symbols Used in This Manual

![WARNING] **WARNING** Indicates a warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the machine safely, always pay attention to these warnings.

![CAUTION] **CAUTION** Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the machine safely, always pay attention to these cautions.

![IMPORTANT] **IMPORTANT** Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the machine correctly, and avoid damage to the machine or property.

![NOTE] **NOTE** Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure. Reading these notes is highly recommended.

![prohibited] Indicates an operation that must not be performed. Read these items carefully, and make sure not to perform the described operations.

Keys and Buttons Used in This Manual

The following symbols and key names are a few examples of how keys to be pressed are expressed in this manual.

- Operation panel keys: [Key icon] + (Key name)

  Example: [(⊘)] (Stop)
- Display: <Specify destination.>
- Buttons and items on the computer display: [Preferences]

Illustrations Used in This Manual

Illustrations used in this manual

Illustrations of the MF8380Cdw are used in this manual. When there is any difference among the machines, it is clearly indicated in the text (for example, "MF8080Cw").

For information on the standard features for each model, see the followings.

▷ "Available Features" (→P.xii)

Displays used in this manual

The display used in this manual is the factory preset display for the MF8380Cdw. Depending on the system configuration and product purchased, the appearance of the display may differ.

● Important Safety Instructions

Please read these "Important Safety Instructions" thoroughly before operating the machine.
As these instructions are intended to prevent injury to the user and other persons or to prevent destruction of property, always pay attention to these instructions and operational requirements.
Also, as it may result in unexpected accidents or injuries, do not perform any operation unless otherwise specified in the manual.

Installation

⚠ WARNING

- Do not install the machine in a location near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the machine, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not place the following items on the machine.
  - Necklaces and other metal objects
  - Cups, vases, flowerpots, and other containers filled with water or liquids

  If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the machine, this may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or spilled inside the machine, immediately turn OFF the power switches of the machine and computer (1) and disconnect the interface cable if it is connected (2). Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet (3) and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

- When installing and removing the optional accessories, be sure to turn the machine off, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the machine. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use this product near any medical electric equipment. Radiowave emitted from this product may influence those medical electric equipment. This may result in accidents caused by malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not install the machine in unstable locations, such as on unsteady platforms or inclined floors, or in locations subject to excessive vibrations, as this may cause the machine to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.
- The ventilation slots are provided for proper ventilation of working parts inside the machine. Never place the machine on a soft surface, such as a bed, sofa, or rug. Blocking the slots can cause the machine to overheat, resulting in a fire.
- Do not install the machine in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
  - A damp or dusty location
  - A location exposed to smoke and steam, such as near a cookery or humidifier
  - A location exposed to rain or snow
  - A location near a water faucet or water
  - A location exposed to direct sunlight
  - A location subject to high temperatures
  - A location near open flames
- When installing the machine, gently lower the machine to the installation site so as not to catch your hands between the machine and the floor or between the machine and other equipment, as this may result in personal injury.
- When connecting the interface cable, connect it properly by following the instructions in this manual. If not connected properly, this may result in malfunction or electrical shock.
- When moving the machine, follow the instructions in this manual to hold it correctly. Failure to do so may cause you to drop the machine, resulting in personal injury.
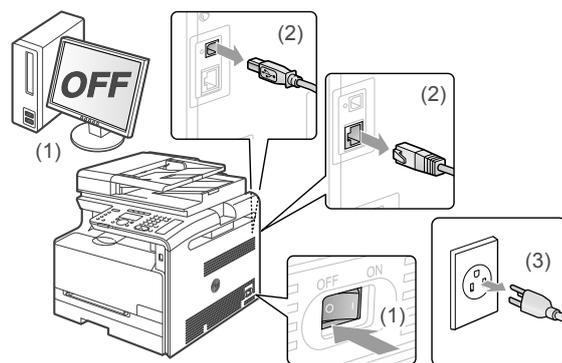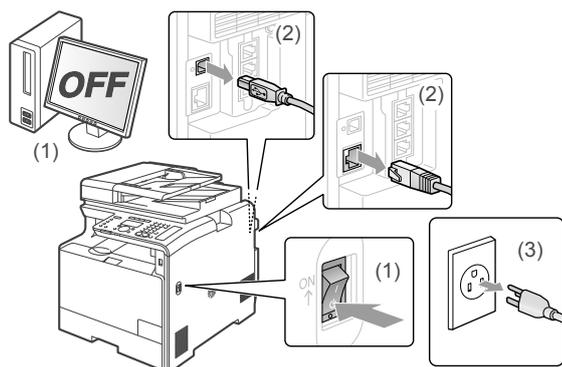 ▶ "Relocating the Machine" (→P.8-14)

Power Supply

⚠ WARNING

- Do not damage or modify the power cord. Also, do not place heavy objects on the power cord or pull on or excessively bend it. This can cause electrical damage, resulting in fire or electrical shock.
- Keep the power cord away from all heat sources. Failure to do so can cause the power cord insulation to melt, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- The power cord should not be taut, as this may lead to a loose connection and cause overheating, which could result in a fire.
- The power cord may become damaged if it is stepped on, fixed with staples, or if heavy objects are placed on it. Continued use of a damaged power cord can lead to an accident, such as a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this can result in electrical shock.
- Do not plug the power cord into a multiplug power strip, as this can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not bundle up or tie up the power cord in a knot, as this can result in a fire or electrical shock.

- Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet. Failure to do so can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- If excessive stress is applied to the connection part of the power cord, it may damage the power cord or the wires inside the machine may be disconnected. This could result in a fire. Avoid the following situations:
  - Connecting and disconnecting the power cord frequently.
  - Tripping over the power cord.
  - The power cord is bent near the connection part, and continuous stress is being applied to the power outlet or the connection part.
  - Applying a shock to the power connector.
- Do not use power cords other than the one provided, as this can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- As a general rule, do not use extension cords. Using an extension cord may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Remove the power plug from the AC power outlet and refrain from using the machine during a thunder storm. Lightning can result in a fire, electrical shock or malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use a power supply voltage other than that listed herein, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Always grasp the power plug when unplugging the power plug. Do not pull on the power cord, as this may expose the core wire of the power cord or damage the cord insulation, causing electricity to leak, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily. If objects are placed around the power plug, you may be unable to unplug it in an emergency.
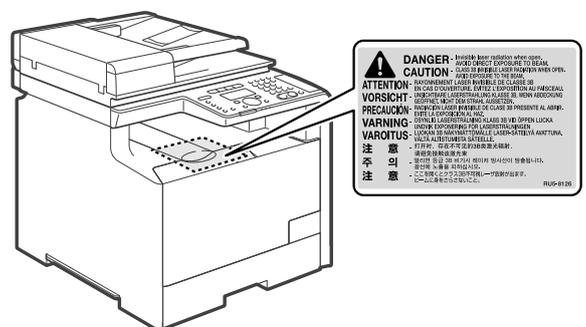
Handling

⚠ WARNING

- Do not disassemble or modify the machine. There are high-temperature and high-voltage components inside the machine which may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Electrical equipment can be hazardous if not used properly. Do not allow children to touch the power cord, cables, internal gears, or electrical parts.
- If the machine makes an unusual noise or emits smoke, heat, or an unusual smell, immediately turn OFF the power switches of the machine and computer and disconnect the interface cable if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer. Continued use can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use flammable sprays near the machine. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the machine, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Always turn OFF the power switches of the machine and computer, and then unplug the power plug and interface cables before moving the machine. Failure to do so can damage the cables or cords, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Confirm that the power plug or power connector is inserted completely after moving the machine. Failure to do so can result in an overheating and fire.
- Do not drop paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the machine. Also, do not spill water, liquids, or other flammable substances (alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, etc.) inside the machine. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the machine, this may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or

spilled inside the machine, immediately turn OFF the power switches of the machine and computer and disconnect the interface cable if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- When plugging or unplugging a USB cable when the power plug is plugged into an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this can result in electrical shock.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not place heavy objects on the machine. The object or the machine may fall, resulting in personal injury.
- Turn OFF the power switch when the machine will not be used for a long period of time, such as overnight. Turn OFF the machine and unplug the power plug if the machine will not be used for an extended period of time, such as for several days.
- Open or close covers and install or remove cassettes gently and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your fingers.
- Keep your hands and clothing away from the roller in the output area. Even if the machine is not printing, the roller may suddenly rotate and catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.
- The output slot is hot during and immediately after printing. Do not touch the area surrounding the output slot, as this may result in burns.
- Printed paper may be hot immediately after being output. Be careful when removing the paper and aligning the removed paper, especially after continuous printing. Failure to do so may result in burns.
- When performing copy with a thick book placed on the platen glass, do not press the feeder or the platen glass cover forcefully. This may damage the platen glass and cause personal injury.
- Be careful not to drop a heavy object, such as a dictionary, on the platen glass. This may damage the platen glass and cause personal injury.
- Close the feeder or the platen glass cover gently so as not to catch your hand. This may result in personal injury.
- The laser beam can be harmful to the human body. The laser beam is confined in the laser scanner unit by a cover, so there is no danger of the laser beam escaping during normal machine operation. Read the following remarks and instructions for safety.
  - Never open covers other than those indicated in this manual.
  - Do not remove the caution label attached to the cover of the laser scanner unit.

  - If the laser beam should escape and enter your eyes, exposure may cause damage to your eyes.

- If you operate this machine in manners other than the control, adjustment, and operating procedures prescribed in this manual, this may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
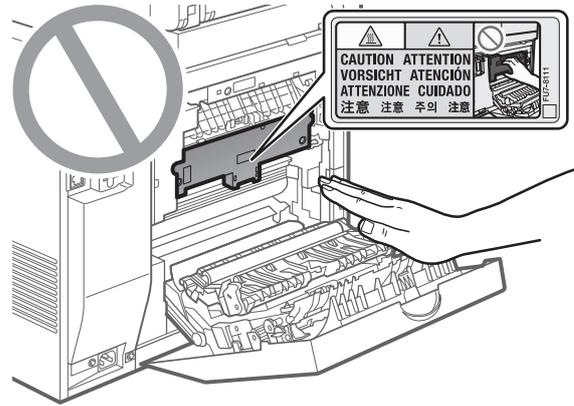- This machine is confirmed as the class 1 laser product in IEC60825-1:2007.

Maintenance and Inspections

⚠ **WARNING**

- When cleaning the machine, turn OFF the machine and computer, and unplug the interface cables and power plug. Failure to do so can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet periodically and clean the area around the base of the power plug's metal pins and the AC power outlet with a dry cloth to remove all dust and grime. In damp, dusty, or smoky locations, dust can build up around the power plug and become damp, which can cause a short circuit, resulting in a fire.
- Clean the machine with a well wrung out cloth dampened with water or mild detergent diluted with water. Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the machine, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Some areas inside the machine are subject to high voltage. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting inside of the machine, be careful not to allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the machine, as this can result in burns or electrical shock.
- Do not dispose of used toner cartridges in open flames. This may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridges to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.
- Confirm that the power plug or power connector is inserted completely after cleaning the machine. Failure to do so can result in an overheating and fire.
- Check the power cord and plug regularly. The following conditions may result in fire, so please contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.
  - There are burn marks on the power plug.
  - The blade on the power plug is deformed or broken.
  - The power is turned OFF or ON when bending the power cord.
  - The coating of the power cord is damaged, cracked, or dented.
  - A part of the power cord becomes hot.
- Check regularly that the power cord and plug are not handled in the following manner. Failure to do so can result in a fire or electrical shock.
  - The power connector is loosened.
  - Stress is being applied to the power cord by a heavy object or by fixing it with staples.
  - The power plug is loosened.
  - The power cord is tied in a bundle.
  - A part of the power cord is put in an aisle.
  - The power cord is put in front of the heating appliance.

⚠ **CAUTION**

- The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the machine become hot during use. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the machine, do not touch the fixing unit and its surroundings, as this may result in burns.

- When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the machine, do not expose yourself to the heat emitted from the fixing unit and its surroundings for a prolonged period of time. Doing so may result in low temperature burns, even though you did not touch the fixing unit and its surroundings directly, as this may result in burns.
- If paper is jammed, remove the jammed paper so that any pieces of paper do not remain inside the machine according to the displayed message. Also, do not put your hand in an area other than indicated areas, as this may result in personal injuries or burns.
- When removing jammed paper or replacing a toner cartridge, be careful not to get any toner on your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water sets the toner, making it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- When removing jammed paper, be careful not to allow the toner on the paper to scatter. The toner may get into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- When loading paper or removing jammed documents or paper, be careful not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.
- When removing a toner cartridge, remove the toner cartridge carefully so as to prevent the toner from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- Do not attempt to disassemble the toner cartridge. The toner may scatter and get into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- If toner leaks from the toner cartridge, be careful not to inhale the toner or allow it to come into direct contact with your skin. If the toner comes into contact with your skin, wash with soap. If the skin becomes irritated or you inhale the toner, consult a physician immediately.

Consumables

⚠ WARNING

- Do not dispose of used toner cartridges in open flames. This may cause the toner to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.
- Do not store toner cartridges or paper in a location exposed to open flames. This may cause the toner or paper to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.
- When disposing of a toner cartridge, place the toner cartridge into a bag to prevent the toner from scattering, and then dispose of the toner cartridge according to local regulations.

⚠ CAUTION

- Keep the toner cartridges and other consumables out of the reach of small children. If the toner or other parts are ingested, consult a physician immediately.
- Do not attempt to disassemble the toner cartridge. The toner may scatter and get into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- If toner leaks from the toner cartridge, be careful not to inhale the toner or allow it to come into direct contact with your skin. If the toner comes into contact with your skin, wash with soap. If the skin becomes irritated or you inhale the toner, consult a physician immediately.
- Do not pull out the sealing tape forcefully or stop at midpoint, as this may cause toner to spill out. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

Others

⚠ WARNING

If you are using a cardiac pacemaker

This machine generates a low level magnetic flux. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from this machine and consult your physician immediately.

Telephone Equipment

When using telephone equipment, basic safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons, including the following:

1. Do not use this machine near water (i.e., near a bathtub, kitchen sink, or laundry tub), or in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.

2. Avoid using the telephone during an electrical storm, as there may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.

3. Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

Installation Requirements and Handling

In order to use this machine in a safe and trouble-free manner, install the machine in a place that fulfills the following conditions. Also, read the remarks carefully.

Temperature and Humidity Conditions

- Temperature range: 50 to 86°F (10 to 30°C)
- Humidity range: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation)

IMPORTANT

Protecting the machine from condensation

- To prevent condensation from forming inside the machine in the following cases, let the machine adjust to the ambient temperature and humidity for at least two hours before use.
  - When the room where the machine is installed is heated rapidly
  - When the machine is moved from a cool or dry location to a hot or humid location
- If water droplets (condensation) form inside the machine, this can result in paper jams or poor print quality.

When using an ultrasonic humidifier

When you are using an ultrasonic humidifier, it is therefore recommended that you use purified water or other water that is free of impurities.
If you use tap water or well water, impurities in the water will be dispersed through the air. This can be trapped inside the machine, causing degradation in print quality.

Power Supply Requirements

120 to 127 V, 60 Hz

IMPORTANT

Precautions when connecting the power cord

- Do not connect this machine to an uninterruptible power source.
- Use an AC power outlet exclusively for the machine. Do not use the other sockets of the AC power outlet.
- Do not plug the power plug into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.
  Do not use the same AC power outlet for both the machine and any of the following equipment.
  - Copy machine
  - Air conditioner
  - Shredder
  - Equipment that consumes a large amount of electricity
  - Equipment that generates electrical noise
- When unplugging the power cord, keep interval of 5 seconds or more before plugging it again.

Miscellaneous precautions

- The maximum power consumption of the machine is as follows.
  - MF8380Cdw: 1,200 W or less
  - MF8080Cw: 900 W or less
- Electrical noise or a dramatic drop in supplied voltage may cause the machine or computer to operate incorrectly or lose data.

Installation Requirements

- A location with sufficient space
- A location with good ventilation
- A location with a flat, even surface
- A location able to fully support the weight of the machine

IMPORTANT

Do not install the machine in the following locations, as this may result in damage to the machine.

- A location subject to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity
- A location subject to condensation
- A poorly ventilated location
  (If you use the machine for a long time or to perform a large amount of printing in a poorly ventilated room, the ozone or other odors generated by the machine may create an uncomfortable working environment. In addition, chemical particles are dispersed during printing; therefore, it is important to provide adequate ventilation.)
- A location near equipment that generates magnetic or electromagnetic waves
- A laboratory or location where chemical reactions occur
- A location exposed to salt air, corrosive gases, or toxic gases
- A location, such as on a carpet or mat, that may warp from the weight of the machine or where the machine is liable to sink.
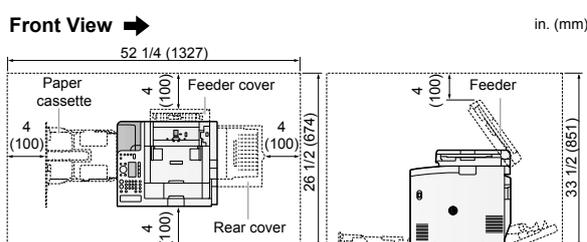
Notes on wireless LAN

- This product is designed for indoor use at a distance of 164' (50 m) or less from an access point (the distance may vary depending on the communication speed or environmental conditions). Keep it at an appropriate distance.
- Check whether or not anything is blocking communication. The signal may be degraded when passing through walls or floors. Install accordingly.
- Radio wave interference may occur if any radio wave emitting equipment (i.e. microwave oven) is located near the product and its radio waves are in the same frequency band as the radio waves used by the wireless LAN. Keep the product as far as possible from sources of radio wave interference.
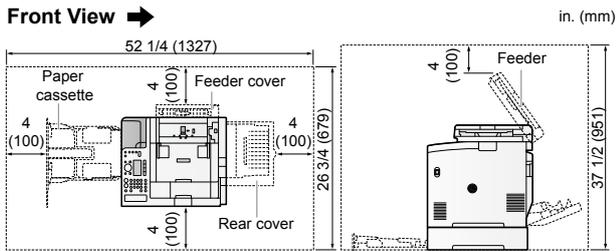
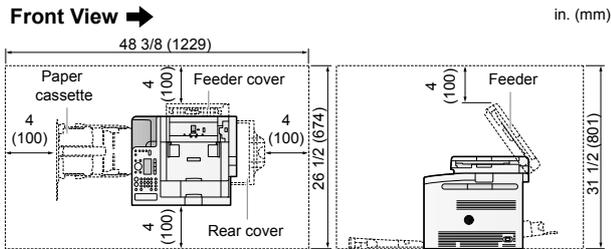## Installation Space

Required installation space

MF8380Cdw

Front View ➡   in. (mm)

xvii

MF8380Cdw (When the Cassette Feeding Unit-V1 (optional) is installed)

Front View ➡   in. (mm)

MF8080Cw

Front View ➡   in. (mm)

Maintenance and Inspections

🖑 IMPORTANT

- Follow the instructions in the caution label attached to this machine.
- Avoid shaking or applying a shock to this machine.
- To prevent a paper jam, do not turn the power ON/OFF, open/close the operation panel or rear cover, and load/unload paper in the middle of printing operation.
- Be sure to remove the toner cartridge from the machine when transporting the machine to a distance.
- To avoid exposing the toner cartridge to light, place it in the protective bag included with this machine or wrap it in a thick cloth.
- Clean the machine regularly. If this machine becomes dusty, it may operate improperly.
- Use a modular cable of 118" (3 m) or shorter in length.
- Depending on your locale or your telephone connection, you may be unable to perform data communication. In this case, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.
- The repairing parts and toner cartridges for the machine will be available for at least seven (7) years after production of this machine model has been discontinued.

Customer Support

Customer Support (U.S.A.)

Your machine is designed with the latest technology to provide trouble-free operation. If you encounter a problem with the machine's operation, try to solve it by using the information in Chapter 9. If you cannot solve the problem or if you think your machine needs servicing, contact Canon Customer Care Center at 1-800-OK-CANON between the hours of 8:00 A.M. to 8:00 P.M. EST Monday through Friday. On-line support for 24 hours is also available at the website. http://www.canontechsupport.com/

Customer Support (Canada)

Canon Canada Inc., offers a full range of customer technical support options*:

- For step-by-step troubleshooting, e-mail technical support, the latest driver or document downloads, and answers to frequently asked questions, visit http://www.canon.ca/
- Free live technical support 9 A.M. to 8 P.M. EST Monday through Friday (excluding holidays) for products still under warranty 1-800-OK-CANON
- For the location of the authorized service facility nearest you, visit http://www.canon.ca/ or 1-800-OK-CANON
- If the problem cannot be corrected by using one of the above technical support options, repair options are available at the time of your call to the live technical support number above or via the website at http://www.canon.ca/
  * Support program specifics are subject to change without notice.

Legal Notices

International ENERGY STAR Program

As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR Program for energy efficiency.
The International ENERGY STAR Office Equipment Program is an international program that promotes energy saving through the use of computers and other office equipment.
The program backs the development and dissemination of products with functions that effectively reduce energy consumption. It is an open system in which business proprietors can participate voluntarily.
The targeted products are office equipment, such as computers, displays, printers, facsimiles, and copiers. The standards and logos are uniform among participating nations.

IPv6 Ready Logo

The protocol stack included in this machine has obtained the IPv6 Ready Logo Phase-1 established by the IPv6 Forum.

Trademarks

Canon, the Canon logo, and Color imageCLASS are registered trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be trademarks or registered trademarks in other countries.
Apple, Mac OS, and Macintosh are trademarks or registered trademarks of Apple Inc. in the U.S. and/or other countries.
Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
All other product and brand names are registered trademarks, trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.

Copyright

© 2011 by Canon Inc. All rights reserved.
No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.

Third Party Software

This Canon product (the "PRODUCT") includes third-party software modules. Use and distribution of these software modules (the "SOFTWARE") are subject to the conditions below.

(1) You agree that you will comply with any applicable export control laws, restrictions or regulations of the countries involved in the event that this product including the SOFTWARE is shipped, transferred or exported into any country.

(2) Rights holders of the SOFTWARE retain in all respects the title, ownership and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE. Except as expressly provided herein, no license or right, expressed or implied, is hereby conveyed or granted by rights holders of the SOFTWARE to you for any intellectual property of rights holders of the SOFTWARE.

(3) You may use the SOFTWARE solely for use with the PRODUCT.

(4) You may not assign, sublicense, market, distribute, or transfer the SOFTWARE to any third party without prior written consent of rights holders of the SOFTWARE.

(5) Notwithstanding the foregoing, you may transfer the SOFTWARE only when (a) you assign to a transferee all of your rights to the PRODUCT and all rights and obligations under the conditions governing the SOFTWARE and PRODUCT and (b) such transferee agrees in writing to be bound by all these conditions.

(6) You may not decrypt, decompile, reverse engineer, disassemble or otherwise reduce the code of the SOFTWARE to human readable form.

(7) You may not modify, adapt, translate, rent, lease or loan the SOFTWARE or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE.

(8) You are not entitled to remove or make separate copies of the SOFTWARE from the PRODUCT.

(9) The human-readable portion (the source code) of the SOFTWARE is not licensed to you.

Notwithstanding (1) through (9) above, in case any other license conditions accompany third-party software modules, these software modules are subject to these other conditions, as well.

ACCEPTANCE
THE TERMS OF THIS THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE STATED HERE OR IN RELATED WARRANTY PROVISIONS SHALL BE DEEMED ACCEPTED UPON YOUR USE OF THE PRODUCT FOR ONE OR MORE OF ITS NORMAL PURPOSES, IF THERE HAS BEEN NO OTHER PRIOR EXPRESS ACCEPTANCE.
THE TERMS OF THIS THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE GOVERN THE THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE AS DELIVERED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ALL UPDATED VERSIONS OF THE THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE PROVIDED UNDER MAINTENANCE AGREEMENTS OR OTHER SERVICE ARRANGEMENTS FOR THE PRODUCT WITH CANON USA OR CANON CANADA OR THEIR RESPECTIVE AUTHORIZED SERVICE ORGANIZATIONS.

The Software Subjected to Other Conditions

Please refer to the eManual on a CD-ROM bundled with this product, for more detail and corresponding license conditions.

Disclaimers

The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

For CA, USA only

Included battery contains Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply.
See http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/ for details.

Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

Using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce certain documents, and the use of such images as scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced by your product, may be prohibited by law and may result in criminal and/or civil liability.
A non-exhaustive list of these documents is set forth below. This list is intended to be a guide only. If you are uncertain about the legality of using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce any particular document, and/or of the use of the images scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced, you should consult in advance with your legal advisor for guidance.

- Paper Money
- Money Orders
- Certificates of Deposit
- Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identifying Badges or Insignias
- Selective Service or Draft Papers
- Checks or Drafts Issued by Governmental Agencies
- Motor Vehicle Licenses and Certificates of Title
- Travelers Checks
- Food Stamps
- Passports
- Immigration Papers
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or Other Certificates of Indebtedness
- Stock Certificates
- Copyrighted Works/Works of Art without Permission of Copyright Owner

FCC (Federal Communications Commission)

Color imageCLASS MF8380Cdw: F157902
Color imageCLASS MF8080Cw: F157802
Contains Transmitter Module FCC ID: AZDFM48944

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

- Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used for connection to host computers and / or peripherals in order to meet FCC emission limits.
- AC adaptor with ferrite core must be used for RF interference suppression.

NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles). Use of shielded cable is required to comply with class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in this manual. If you make such changes or modifications, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Canon U.S.A., Inc.

One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.

TEL No. 1-800-OK-CANON

Users in the U.S.A.

Pre-Installation Requirements for Canon Facsimile Equipment

A. Location

Supply a suitable table, cabinet, or desk for the machine. See Chapter 11, "Appendix," for specific dimensions and weight.

B. Order Information

1. A single telephone line (touch-tone or rotary) should be used.
2. Order an RJ11-C telephone wall jack (USOC), which should be installed by the telephone company. If the RJ11-C wall jack is not present, telephone/facsimile operation is not possible.

3. Order a normal business line from your telephone company's business representative. The line should be a regular voice grade line or an equivalent one. Use one line per unit.

DDD (Direct Distance Dial) line
-or-
IDDD (International Direct Distance Dial) line if you communicate overseas

NOTE

Canon recommends an individual line following industry standards, i.e., 2,500 (touch-tone) or 500 (rotary/pulse dial) telephones. A dedicated extension off a PBX (Private Branch eXchange) unit without "Call Waiting" can be used with your facsimile unit. Key telephone systems are not recommended because they send nonstandard signals to individual telephones for ringing and special codes, which may cause a facsimile error.

C. Power Requirements

The machine should be connected to a standard 120 volt AC, three-wire grounded outlet only.
Do not connect this machine to an outlet or power line shared with other appliances that cause "electrical noise." Air conditioners, electric typewriters, copiers, and machines of this sort generate electrical noise that often interferes with communications equipment and the sending and receiving of documents.

Connection of the Equipment

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the ACTA. On the rear panel of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format of US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.
The REN (Ringer Equivalence Number) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all areas, the sum of the RENs should not exceed five (5.0).
To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company. The REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US: AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (e.g., 10 is a REN of 1.0).
An FCC compliant telephone line cable and modular plug is provided with this equipment. This equipment is designed to be connected to the telephone network or premise wiring using a compatible modular jack that is Part 68 compliant. This equipment may not be used on coin service provided by the telephone company. Connection to party lines is subjected to state tariffs.

In Case of Equipment Malfunction

Should any malfunction occur which cannot be corrected by the procedures described in this guide or the e-Manual, disconnect the equipment from the telephone line cable and disconnect the power cord.
The telephone line cable should not be reconnected or the power switch turned ON until the problem is completely resolved. Users should contact Canon Authorized Service Facilities for servicing of equipment, Information regarding Authorized Service Facility locations can be obtained by calling Canon Customer Care Center (1-800-OK-CANON).

Rights of the Telephone Company

If this equipment (Color imageCLASS MF8380Cdw/MF8080Cw) causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may temporarily disconnect service. The telephone company also retains the right to make changes in facilities and services that may affect the operation of this equipment. When such changes are necessary, the telephone company is required to give adequate prior notice to the user. However, if advance notice is not possible, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, the customer will be advised of his/her right to file a complaint with the FCC if he/she believes it is necessary.

⚠ WARNING

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including FAX machines, to send any message unless such message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual.
(The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

NOTE

In order to program this information into your machine, you should complete the procedure for registering your name, unit's telephone number, time, and date in the Starter Guide.

Users in Canada

Pre-Installation Requirements for Canon Facsimile Equipment

A. Location

Supply a suitable table, cabinet, or desk for the machine. See Chapter 11, "Appendix," for specific dimensions and weight.

B. Order Information

1. A single telephone line (touch-tone or rotary) should be used.
2. Order a CA11A modular jack, which should be installed by the telephone company. If the CA11A jack is not present, installation cannot occur.
3. Order a normal business line from your telephone company's business representative. The line should be a regular voice grade line or an equivalent one. Use one line per unit.

DDD (Direct Distance Dial) line
-or-
IDDD (International Direct Distance Dial) line if you communicate overseas

NOTE

Canon recommends an individual line following industry standards, i.e., 2,500 (touch-tone) or 500 (rotary/pulse dial) telephones. A dedicated extension off a PBX (Private Branch eXchange) unit without "Call Waiting" can be used with your facsimile unit. Key telephone systems are not recommended because they send nonstandard signals to individual telephones for ringing and special codes, which may cause a facsimile error.

C. Power Requirements

The power outlet should be a three-prong grounded receptacle (Single or Duplex). It should be independent from copiers, heaters, air conditioners, or any electric equipment that is thermostatically controlled. The rated value is 115 volts and 15 amperes. The CA11A modular jack should be relatively close to the power outlet to facilitate installation.

Notice

- This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications.

- The Ringer Equivalence Number is an indication of the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five.

- The REN of this product is 1.0.

- Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. In some cases, the company's inside wiring associated with a single line individual service may be extended by means of a certified connector assembly (telephone extension cord). The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent deterioration of service in some situations.

- Repairs to certified equipment should be made by an authorized Canadian maintenance facility designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

- Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines, and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

⚠ CAUTION

Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate.

🔋 NOTE

This equipment complies with the Canadian ICES-003 Class B limits.

Utilisation au Canada

Conditions à Remplir Préalablement à L'installation d'un Télécopieur Canon

A. Emplacement

Prévoir une table, un meuble, ou un bureau suffisamment solide et de taille appropriée (voir le chapitre 11, Annexe (Appendix), pour les indications de poids et dimensions).

B. Installation téléphonique

1. Une seule ligne téléphonique (tonalités ou impulsions) doit être utilisée.
2. Il faut commander un jack modulaire CA11A qui sera installé par la compagnie téléphonique. Sans ce jack, la mise en place serait impossible.
3. Si vous vous abonnez à une nouvelle ligne, demandez une ligne d'affaires normale de qualité téléphonique courante ou équivalente. Prenez un abonnement d'une ligne par appareil.

Ligne automatique interurbaine
ou
Ligne automatique internationale (si vous communiquez avec les pays étrangers)

🔋 NOTE

Canon vous conseille d'utiliser une ligne individuelle conforme aux normes industrielles, à savoir:
ligne téléphonique 2,500 (pour appareil à clavier) ou 500 (pour appareil à cadran/impulsions). Il est également possible de raccorder ce télécopieur à un système téléphonique à poussoirs car la plupart de ces systèmes émettent des signaux d'appel non normalisés ou des codes spéciaux qui risquent de perturber le fonctionnement du télécopieur.

C. Condition d'alimentation

Raccordez le télécopieur à une prise de courant plus terre à trois branches, du type simple ou double, et qui ne sert pas à alimenter un copieur, un appareil de chauffage, un climatiseur ou tout autre appareil électrique à thermostat. L'alimentation doit être de 115 volts et 15 ampères. Pour faciliter l'installation, le jack CA11A doit être assez proche de la prise de courant.

Remarques

- Le présent matériel est conforme aux spécifications techniques applicables d'Industrie Canada.

- Avant d'installer cet appareil, l'utilisateur doit s'assurer qu'il est permis de le connecter à l'équipement de la compagnie de télécommunication locale et doit installer cet appareil en utilisant une méthode de connexion autorisée. Il se peut qu'il faille étendre la circuiterie intérieure de la ligne individuelle d'abonné, qui a été installée par la compagnie, au moyen d'un jeu de connecteurs homologués (rallonge téléphonique).

- L'attention de l'utilisateur est attirée sur le fait que le respect des conditions mentionnées ci-dessus ne constitue pas une garantie contre les dégradations de qualité du service dans certaines circonstances.

- L'indice d'équivalence de la sonnerie (IES) sert à indiquer le nombre maximal de terminaux qui peuvent être raccordés à une interface téléphonique. La terminaison d'une interface peut consister en une combinaison quelconque de dispositifs, à la seule condition que la somme d'indices d'équivalence de la sonnerie de tous les dispositifs n'excède pas 5.

- Le nombre d'équivalents sonnerie (REN) de ce produit est 1,0.

- Les réparations sur un appareil certifié doivent être faites par une société d'entretien canadienne autorisée par le Gouvernement canadien et désignée par le fournisseur. Toute réparation ou modification que pourrait faire l'utilisateur de cet appareil, ou tout mauvais fonctionnement, donne à la compagnie de télécommunication le droit de débrancher l'appareil.

- Pour sa propre protection, l'utilisateur doit s'assurer que les prises de terre de l'appareil d'alimentation, les lignes téléphoniques et les tuyaux métalliques internes, s'il y en a, sont bien connectés entre eux. Cette précaution est particulièrement importante dans les zones rurales

⚠ CAUTION

Au lieu d'essayer de faire ces branchements eux-mêmes, les utilisateurs sont invités à faire appel à un service d'inspection faisant autorité en matière d'électricité ou à un électricien, selon le cas.

🔋 NOTE

Respecte les limites de la classe B de la NMB-003 du Canada.

Laser Safety

This machine complies with 21 CFR Chapter 1 Subchapter J as a Class 1 laser product under the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. This means that the machine does not produce hazardous radiation.

Since radiation emitted inside the machine is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the machine during any phase of user operation.

CDRH Regulations

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration implemented regulations for laser products on August 2, 1976. These regulations apply to laser products manufactured from August 1, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States.

⚠ CAUTION

Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

The label is attached to the laser scanner machine inside the machine and is not in a user access area.

Chapter 1

Before Using the Machine

This category describes the features of the machine and its useful functions.

Parts and Their Functions

This section describes the parts and functions of the machine.

Front Side

● MF8380Cdw

● MF8080Cw

(1) Document guides
Adjust to the width of the document.

(2) Feeder
The feeder can automatically scan documents continuously.

(3) Operation panel
Controls the machine.
▷ "Operation Panel" (→P.1-6)

(4) Front cover

(5) Multi-purpose tray (Manual feed slot)
Use the tray when printing from the tray.
▷ "Multi-purpose Tray (Manual Feed Slot)" (→P.1-4)

(6) Paper cassette
Load the paper supply.
▷ "Paper Cassette" (→P.1-5)

(7) Document feeder tray
Place document.

(8) Tray extension
Pull out the tray extension when the paper is hanging out of the document feeder tray such as Legal size paper.

(9) Document delivery tray
Documents are output.

(10) Power switch
Turns the power ON or OFF.

(11) Ventilation slots

(12) Speaker

(13) Lift handles

(14) Scanning area
Scans documents from the feeder.

(15) Output tray
Printed paper such as copies, prints and faxes come out from the output tray.

(16) Platen glass
Place a document.

(17) USB memory port
Used to save scanned documents in a USB memory or to print the data stored in a USB memory.

(18) Manual feed transport guide

Back Side

● **MF8380Cdw**

(1)
(2)
(3) (4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)

● **MF8080Cw**

(1)
(2)
(4)
(3)
(8)
(5)
(7)
(6)

(1) **USB port**
Connect the USB cable.

(2) **LAN port**
Connect the LAN cable.

(3) **Telephone line jack**
Connect the telephone cable.

(4) **External telephone jack**
Connect the external telephone.

(5) **Rear cover**
Open this cover when clearing paper jams.

(6) **Rating label**
The current value indicated in this rating label shows the average power current consumption.

(7) **Ventilation slots**

(8) **Power socket**
Connect the power cord.

Interior

● **MF8380Cdw**

(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)

● **MF8080Cw**

(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)

(1)   Y (Yellow) toner cartridge slot
The Y (yellow) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

(2)   M (Magenta) toner cartridge slot
The M (magenta) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

(3)   C (Cyan) toner cartridge slot
The C (cyan) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

(4)   K (Black) toner cartridge slot
The K (black) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

(5)   Toner cartridge tray
Tray for installing the toner cartridges.

Multi-purpose Tray (Manual Feed Slot)

● **MF8380Cdw**

(1)
(2)
(3)

● **MF8080Cw**

(1)

(1)   Paper guides
Adjust to the width of the paper.

(2)   The auxiliary tray (MF8380Cdw only)
Be sure to pull out this tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

(3)   Tray extension (MF8380Cdw only)
Open to prevent the paper from hanging out of the multi-purpose tray when loading long-size paper such as Letter.

Paper Cassette

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

(1) Lock release lever

Hold this lever to slide the paper guides.

(2) Paper guides

Adjust the position of the paper guides to the paper.

(3) Lock release lever (changing cassette size)

When loading paper that is longer than A4 size, pull out the paper cassette while holding this lever.

When the paper cassette is inserted with it extended, the front side of the paper cassette is not flush with the front surface of the machine as shown in the figure.

Set the legal dust cover on the paper cassette.

Operation Panel

● **MF8380Cdw**

(1) (2) (3) (4)

(8) (7) (6) (5)

● **MF8080Cw**

(1) (2) (3) (4)

(8) (7) (6) (5)

* The availability of the keys vary depending on the model. See the descriptions for each key in the table below.

	[Address Book] key	Searches recipients registered in the Favorites list or coded dial codes.
	[Coded Dial] key	Specifies recipients registered under coded dial codes.
	[Recall] key	Redial the last number called. (Only enabled when the mode screens for fax, e-mail or file server operations are displayed.)
	[Pause] key	Press to insert a pause in the fax number.
(1)	**[Hook] key**	Press when you want to dial without lifting up the handset of the external telephone.
	[Wi-Fi] indicator	Lights up when the machine is connected to Wireless LAN.
	Select paper indicator	The indicator for the selected paper source lights up.
	[Select Paper/Settings] key	Press to select the paper source to use. Also press to specify the paper size and type to load in each paper source.

(2)	Mode switch keys	Press to switch the mode to copy, fax, scan or USB direct print.
(3)	[Menu] key	Press to specify or register various settings.
	[*] key	Press to switch the character entry mode. Press to switch between pulse and tone dialing to send a fax.
	[Toner Gauge] key	Press to check the remaining amount of toner.
	[Energy Saver] key	Press to manually set or cancel the Sleep mode. The Energy Saver indicator lights green while in the sleep mode.
	[ID] key	Press to log in/out of the machine when the machine is managed by Department ID management.
	Numeric keys ([0]-[9] keys)	Enter characters and numbers.
	[#] key	Press to enter symbols.
	[Report] key	Press to manually print reports and lists. You can also specify whether to print a report automatically.
	[Clear] key	Deletes characters and numbers entered.
(4)	Shortcut Keys	
	[Scan > PC1] key/[Scan > PC2] key	Press to send your scans to the computer registered in each key.
	[Secure Print] key (MF8380Cdw only)	Press to use the Secure Print function. You can print your secure print jobs using this key.
	[Paper Save Copy] key	Press to make copies with the preset modes to reduce paper consumption.
(5)	[Start] keys • [B&W] key • [Color] key	Press to start copying, scanning, sending a fax or USB direct print in black and white. Press to start copying, scanning or USB direct print in color.
	[Stop] key	Press to cancel jobs.
(6)	LCD	Displays messages and operation status. Displays items, texts, and numbers when you are specifying settings.
(7)	[Status Monitor/Cancel] key	Press to check the status of jobs or cancel jobs. You can also check the status of the network and machine.
	[▲] Key	Press to scroll up or to increase the value.
	[▼] Key	Press to scroll down or to decrease the value.
	[◀] Key	Press to return to the previous screen or move the cursor to the left. Press to decrease the sound volume of fax communications.
	[▶] Key	Press to proceed to the next screen or move the cursor to the right. Press to increase the sound volume of fax communications.
	[OK] key	Confirms specified or registered settings.
	[Reset] key	Resets the specified settings for the copy/fax/scan/USB direct print mode to their default.
	[View Settings] key	You can check the settings.
	[Back] key	Press to return to the previous screen.
(8)	[Processing/Data] indicator	Blinks during transmission and lights up when the machine has waiting jobs.
	[Error] indicator	Blinks when an error occurs.

LCD (Standby Mode)

This section describes the following screens.
- Copy Mode
- Fax Mode
- Scan Mode
- USB Direct Print Mode

NOTE -

Display of the standby mode
- You can change the standby display that appears when the power switch is turned ON.
  ☞ e-Manual → Basic Operation → Customizing Display Settings → Setting the Default Screen
- When the machine is idle for the specified period of time, the screen returns to the standby display.
  ☞ e-Manual → Basic Operation → Customizing Timer Settings → Setting the Auto Reset Timer

- -

Copy Mode

Press [COPY] to switch to the copy mode screen to use the copy function.

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⃞LTR       1
Density: ±0
Original Type: Text…
2-Sided: Off
```

When the copy mode screen is displayed, you can make your selection by using [▲] or [▼].
The currently selected menu item is highlighted. Press [OK] to proceed to the next screen.

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⃞LTR       1
Density: ±0
Original Type: Text…
2-Sided: Off
```

Fax Mode

Press [FAX] to switch to fax mode screen to use the fax function.

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
🖷=▉
RX Mode: Auto
Resolution: 200 x 1…
```

When the fax mode screen is displayed, you can make your selection by using [▲] or [▼].
The currently selected menu item is highlighted. Press [OK] to proceed to the next screen.

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
🖷=▉
RX Mode: Auto
Resolution: 200 x 1…
```

Scan Mode

Press [SCAN] to switch to scan mode screen to use the scan function.
When the scan mode screen is displayed, you can make your selection by using [▲] or [▼].
The currently selected menu item is highlighted. Press [OK] to proceed to the next screen.

```
Select the scan type.

Computer
Remote Scanner
Memory Media
```

USB Direct Print mode

Press [DIRECT PRINT] to switch to the USB direct print mode screen to use the USB direct print function.
When the USB direct print mode screen is displayed, you can make your selection by using [▲] or [▼].
The currently selected menu item is highlighted. Press [OK] to proceed to the next screen.

```
Select printing
method.
Select File(s) to pri
Index print
Sort Files; File Nam…
```

Navigating the Menu

This section describes how to navigate the menu and configure menu options on the menu screen.

Keys to be used for this operation

Back   ▲▼◀▶ OK   Menu

Entering the Menu Screen

Press [⊛] (Menu) to enter the menu screen.

Scrolling the Menu

The scroll bar at the right side of the screen indicates that more items are available in the menu.
To select an item that is not shown on the screen, press [▲] or [▼] to scroll up and down the menu.
The currently selected item is highlighted with a black background.

```
Menu
  Preferences
  Timer Settings
  Common Settings
  Copy Settings
```

Selecting a Menu Item

Press [OK] to select the highlighted menu.
When the menu has a submenu, you can press [▶] to select the item and proceed to the next screen.
You can return to the previous screen by pressing [◯] (Back) or [◀].

```
Menu
  Preferences
  Timer Settings
  Common Settings
  Copy Settings
```
[OK] or [▶]

[Back] or [◀]

```
Timer Settings
  Time & Date Settings
  Sleep Timer
  Auto Reset Timer
  Screen After Auto R...
```

Configuring menus using the navigation keys

How to configure menus

What you want to do	Screen example	Procedure
Adjust levels such as density on the scale	Density -□□□□ □□□□+ Background: Default Color Balance: Defau...	Press [◀] or [▶] to adjust the level.
Set the timer	Numeric key icon Auto Reset Timer ▲ 2　min. ▼ (0=Off, 1-9)	Press [▲] or [▼] to specify the value. **NOTE** **Values that you can specify** You can specify any value shown in the parentheses at the bottom of the screen. **When the numeric key icon is displayed on the screen** You can enter it using the numeric keys. ▶"Entering Text" (→P.1-11)
Enter numbers or characters such as a PIN.	System Manager PIN ******* (Apply: Press OK)	You can enter numbers or characters using the numeric keys. ▶"Entering Text" (→P.1-11)

Confirming the entry
To confirm the entered numbers or characters:
- Press [OK].
- Select <Apply> displayed on the screen using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

Returning to the Default Screen

Press [⊛] (Menu) to exit the menu screen and return to the default screen.

NOTE
If you press [⊛] (Menu) before you press [OK]
The changes made to the settings will not be saved.

Entering Text

Enter information (text, symbols, and numbers) using the following keys.

Keys to be used for this operation

▲▼◄►OK   Numeric   ✳   #   C
            keys

Changing the Entry Mode

```
Register Unit Name
 ▮
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

Select <Entry Mode> using [▼] and press [OK].
You can also press [✳] (Tone) to change the entry mode.

Entry mode	Text that can be entered
<A>	Alphabet (capital letters) and symbols
<a>	Alphabet (small letters) and symbols
<12>	Numbers

Entering Text, Symbols, and Numbers

Enter using the numeric keys or [#] (SYMBOLS).

Keys used	Entry mode: <A>	Entry mode: <a>	Entry mode: <12>
1	@ . - _ /		1
2	ABC	abc	2
3	DEF	def	3
4	GHI	ghi	4
5	JKL	jkl	5
6	MNO	mno	6
7	PQRS	pqrs	7
8	TUV	tuv	8
9	WXYZ	wxyz	9
0	(Not available)		0
#	(space) @ . / - _ ! ? & $ % # ( ) [ ] { } < > * + = " , ; : ' ^ ` | ˜		(Not available)

Moving the Cursor (Entering a Space)

Move the cursor by pressing [◄] or [►].
To enter a space, move the cursor to the end of the text and press [►].

Deleting text, symbols, or numbers

To delete text, numbers, or symbols, press [C] (Clear).
To delete all text, numbers, or symbols, press and hold [C] (Clear).

Example: Enter <CANON>.

1 Make sure that the entry mode is set to <A>.

2 Press [2] until the letter "C" appears on the screen.

```
Register Unit Name
 C▮
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

3 Press [2] until the letter "A" appears on the screen.

```
Register Unit Name
 CA▮
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

4 Press [6] until the letter "N" appears on the screen.

```
Register Unit Name
 CAN▮
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

5 Press [6] until the letter "O" appears on the screen.

```
Register Unit Name
 CANO▮
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

6 Press [⑥] until the letter "N" appears on the screen.

```
Register Unit Name
 CANON█
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

7 Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

The entry is complete.

Setting the Sleep Timer

The machine automatically enters the sleep mode after it has been idle for a specified length of time.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <Timer Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
  Preferences
  Timer Settings
  Common Settings
  Copy Settings
```

3 Select <Sleep Timer> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Timer Settings
  Time & Date Settings
  Sleep Timer
  Auto Reset Timer
  Screen After Auto R...
```

4 Specify the time using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

* You can also enter values using the numeric keys.
* We recommend that you use the default timer setting.

```
Sleep Timer

         ▲
       10    min.
         ▼
    (10-240)
```

NOTE -

To set the auto sleep timer

You can set the auto sleep timer in one minute interval within the range below:

MF8380Cdw: 10 to 240 minutes (The default is <10> minutes.)
MF8080Cw: 20 to 240 minutes (The default is <20> minutes.)

- -

5 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

NOTE -

When the machine enters the sleep mode

[⊕] (Energy Saver) lights green.

To enter the sleep mode manually

Press [⊕] (Energy Saver).

The machine does not enter the sleep mode when

- the machine is in the middle of operation.
- the Processing/Data indicator lights or is blinking.
- a message appears on the screen and the Error indicator is blinking.

Except when

- a message such as <Prepare toner cartridge.> is displayed, indicating the machine continues printing with a small amount of toner left is displayed.
- a message indicating the yellow, magenta, or cyan toner cartridge has reached its life end is displayed.
- the message <Output Tray Full> is displayed.
- the message <No Paper> is displayed when there are no jobs.
- the machine is in the middle of adjustment or cleaning.
- a paper jam occurs.
- the handset of the external telephone is left unhooked.
- the Menu screen is displayed on the LCD display.

The machine returns from sleep mode when

[⊕] (Energy Saver) is pressed.
the external telephone is taken off the hook.

- -

Setting the Current Date and Time

Specify the date and time display formats and set the current date and time.

The specified date and time are used for some fax functions and reports.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼◀▶OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <Timer Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 Preferences
 Timer Settings
 Common Settings
 Copy Settings
```

3 Select <Time & Date Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Timer Settings
 Time & Date Settings
 Sleep Timer
 Auto Reset Timer
 Screen After Auto R...
```

4 Select the setting using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Time & Date Settings
 Date Display Type
 12/24 Hour Clock
 Current Time Settings
 Daylight Savings
```

Settings	Purpose	What to do
<Date Display Type>	Specify the date display format.	Select one of the following display formats using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK]. The formats include the following. • MM/DD YYYY • DD/MM YYYY • YYYY MM/DD
<12/24 Hour Clock>	Specify the time display format.	Select one of the following display formats using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK]. The formats include the following. • 12 Hour (AM/PM) • 24 Hour
<Current Time Settings>*	Specify the current time and date.	Use [▲] or [▼] to enter time and date, or to switch between <AM> and <PM>. To move the cursor, press [◀] or [▶]. Current Time Settings 01/01 2011 12:52 AM
<Time Zone Settings>	Specify the time zone.	Select the time zone using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
<Daylight Savings>	Specify whether to use the daylight saving time.	To use daylight saving time, 1. Select <On> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK]. 2. Specify the starting date of the daylight saving time. - Select <Month> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK]. - Select the starting month and press [OK]. - Select <Day> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK]. - Select the starting week and press [OK]. - Select the starting day and press [OK]. - Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK]. 3. Repeat Step 2 to specify the ending date.

* Make sure to configure <Time Zone Settings> before configuring <Current Time Settings> (If you change <Time Zone Settings>, <Current Time Settings> will be changed accordingly).

5 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Chapter | **2**

Document and Paper Handling

● Document Type

Supported Document Types

	Platen Glass	Feeder
Type	• Plain paper • Heavy paper • Photograph • Small documents (for example, index cards) • Special types of paper (for example, tracing paper, transparencies, etc.)[*1] • Booklet (Up to 3/4" (20 mm) thickness)	Plain paper (Multi-page documents of the same size, thickness and weight/one-page documents)
Size (W x L)	Up to 8 1/2" x 11 3/4" (215.9 mm x 297 mm)	• Maximum size: 8 1/2" x 14" (215.9 mm x 355.6 mm) • Minimum size: 5 1/2" x 5" (139.7 mm x 128 mm)
Weight	Up to 4.4 lb (2 kg)	12 to 28 lb Bond (50 to 105 g/m^2)
Paper Capacity	1 sheet	Up to 50 sheets (Letter)[*2]

[*1] To copy transparent documents (for example, tracing paper or transparencies), make sure to place the documents face down on the platen glass and cover them with plain white paper.

[*2] 21 lb Bond (80 g/m^2)

✋ IMPORTANT

To place your document

Make sure any glue, ink, or correction fluid on the document is completely dry before placing it on the platen glass or into the feeder.

To prevent paper jams in the feeder

Do not use any of the following.

- Wrinkled or creased paper
- Carbon paper or carbon-backed paper
- Curled or rolled paper
- Coated paper
- Torn paper
- Onion skin or thin paper
- Stapled or clipped documents
- Paper printed by a thermal transfer printer
- Transparencies

● Scan Area

Ensure your document's text and graphics fall within the area specified in the following diagram.

* Note that the margin widths listed below are rough standards and there may be slight variations in actual use.
* The loading orientation of documents is as follows.
  - Platen glass: With the document facing down
  - Feeder: With the document loaded in the document feeder tray

Copy

Platen Glass	Feeder
1/8 in. (3 mm)　　1/8 in. (3 mm) 1/8 in. (3 mm) 1/8 in. (3 mm)	1/8 in. (3 mm)　　1/8 in. (3 mm) 1/8 in. (3 mm) 1/8 in. (3 mm)

* To know the practical printable area, see "Printable Area" (→P.2-8).

Fax

Platen Glass	Feeder
1/8 in. (3 mm) 1/8 in. (3 mm) 3/64 in. (1 mm) 3/64 in. (1 mm)	1/8 in. (3 mm) 1/8 in. (3 mm) 3/64 in. (1 mm) 3/64 in. (1 mm)

Scan (Saving in a Computer)

Platen Glass	Feeder
1/16 in. (1.5 mm)	* The whole document can be scanned without any margins.

Scan (Saving in a USB Memory/Sending by E-mail/Sending to a File Server)

Platen Glass	Feeder
1/16 in. (1.5 mm) 1/64 in. (0.5 mm) 1/64 in. (0.5 mm)	* The whole document can be scanned without any margins.

Placing Documents

This section describes how to place documents on the platen glass or in the feeder.

Placing Documents on the Platen Glass

1 Open the feeder or the platen glass cover.

2 Place your document face down.

3 Align the document with the appropriate paper size marks.

If the document does not match any of the paper size marks, align the center of your document with the arrow mark.

4 Close the feeder or the platen glass cover gently.

The machine is ready to scan or copy the document.

When scanning or copying is complete, remove the document from the platen glass.

> ⚠ **CAUTION**
>
> **Precautions when closing the feeder or the platen glass cover**
>
> - Be careful not to get your fingers caught.
>   This may cause personal injury.
> - Do not press down the feeder or the platen glass cover forcefully. This may damage the platen glass and cause personal injury.

Placing Documents in the Feeder

1 Spread the document guides a little wider than the actual document width.

2 Pull out the tray extension before loading the large size document.

Pull out the tray extension when the document is hanging out of the document feeder tray.

3 Fan the document stack and even the edges.

Thoroughly fan in small batches.

Tap the edges on a flat surface a few times.

4 Neatly place the documents face up.

- Place the document under the load limit guides (A).
- Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks (B).

5 Align the document guides securely against the edges of the document.

The machine is ready to scan the document.

ⓘ IMPORTANT

Up to 50 documents can be loaded.
If 51 or more documents are loaded, paper jams may occur, or the documents may not be scanned.

While scanning a document
Do not add or remove documents.

When scanning documents is complete
Remove the documents from the document delivery tray to avoid paper jams.

Avoid scanning the same document 30 times or more.
When scanned repeatedly, documents can become folded or torn, which may cause paper jams.

Be sure to align the document guides securely against the edges of the document.
- If the document guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
- Printouts may be askew depending on the printing environment. Loading the document properly sometimes relieves the problem.

● Supported Paper Types

Paper Size

The following paper sizes are supported.

○ : Supported

Paper size	Paper Source	
	Paper cassette*¹	Multi-purpose tray Manual feed slot
A4 (8 1/4" x 11 3/4") (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm)*²*³	○	○
B5 (7 1/8" x 10 1/8") (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm)*²	○	○
A5 (5 7/8" x 8 1/4") (148.0 mm x 210.0 mm)	○	○
Legal (8 1/2" x 14") (215.9 mm x 355.6 mm)*²	○	○
Letter (8 1/2" x 11") (215.9 mm x 279.4 mm)*²*³	○	○
Statement (5 1/2" x 8 1/2") (139.7 mm x 215.9 mm)	○	○
Executive (7 1/4" x 10 1/2") (184.0 mm x 266.7 mm)*²*⁴	○	○
Officio (8 1/2" x 12 1/2") (215.9 mm x 317.5 mm)	○	○
B-officio (8 1/2" x 14") (215.9 mm x 355.6 mm)	○	○
M-officio (8 1/2" x 13 3/8") (215.9 mm x 341 mm)	○	○
Government - Letter (8" x 10 1/2") (203.2 mm x 266.7 mm)	○	○
Government - Legal (8" x 13") (203.2 mm x 330.2 mm)	○	○
Foolscap (8 1/2" x 13") (215.9 mm x 330.2 mm)*²	○	○
Envelope COM10 (4 1/8" x 9 1/2") (104.7 mm x 241.3 mm)*⁴*⁵	○	○
Envelope Monarch (3 7/8" x 7 1/2") (98.4 mm x 190.5 mm)*⁴*⁵	○*⁶	○
Envelope C5 (6 3/8" x 9") (162 mm x 229 mm)*⁴*⁵	○	○
Envelope B5 (6 7/8" x 9 7/8") (176 mm x 250 mm)*⁴*⁵	○	○
Envelope DL (4 3/8" x 8 5/8") (110 mm x 220 mm)*⁴*⁵	○	○
Custom Paper Size*⁴	○*⁷	○*⁸

*¹ Only in MF8380Cdw, this type of paper can be loaded also in the optional paper cassette (Cassette 2).
*² Only in MF8380Cdw, auto 2-sided print is available.
*³ Reports or lists can be printed.
*⁴ Received documents cannot be printed.
*⁵ Use envelopes with the flap closed.
*⁶ You can load Envelope Monarch in the paper cassette only for MF8080Cw.
*⁷ You can load paper of the following custom paper sizes.
   • MF8380Cdw
    Width 4" to 8 1/2" (100 to 215.9 mm); Length 5 7/8" to 14" (148 to 355.6 mm)
   • MF8080Cw
    Width 3" to 8 1/2" (76.2 to 215.9 mm); Length 5" to 14" (127 to 355.6 mm)
*⁸ You can load paper of the following custom paper sizes.
   • Width 3" to 8 1/2" (76.2 to 215.9 mm); Length 5" to 14" (127 to 355.6 mm)
   • You can use the index cards of the following sizes:
    - 4" x 6" (102.0 mm x 152.0 mm)
    - 5" x 8" (127.0 mm x 203.0 mm)

📎 **NOTE** -
Default paper size
    The default paper size is Letter. If you use a different paper size, change the paper size settings.
    ▶ "Setting the Paper Size and Type" (→P.2-18)

Paper Type

The following paper types are supported.

— : Unavailable

Paper Type		Printer Driver Setting	Paper Source	
			Paper Capacity (Paper Cassette)	Paper Capacity (Multi-purpose Tray) (Manual Feed Slot)
Plain paper*1	16 to 19 lb Bond (60 to 74 g/m²)	[Plain 1]	• MF8380Cdw: 250 sheets • MF8080Cw: 150 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 50 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet
	• MF8380Cdw: 19 to 24 lb Bond (70 to 90 g/m²) • MF8080Cw: 20 to 24 lb Bond (75 to 90 g/m²)	[Plain 2]		
Heavy Paper*1 (MF8380Cdw)	24 to 32 lb Bond (86 to 119 g/m²)	[Heavy 1]	200 sheets	30 sheets
	32 to 34 lb Bond (120 to 128 g/m²)	[Heavy 2]	150 sheets	20 sheets
	34 lb Bond to 60 lb Cover (129 to 163 g/m²)	[Heavy 3]		
Heavy Paper (MF8080Cw)	25 lb Bond to 45 lb Cover (91 to 120 g/m²)	[Heavy 1]	120 sheets	1 sheet
	32 lb Bond to 60 lb Cover (121 to 163 g/m²)	[Heavy 2]	100 sheets	1 sheet
	61 to 65 lb Cover (164 to 176 g/m²)	[Heavy 3]	—	
Recycled Paper*1	16 to 19 lb Bond (60 to 74 g/m²)	[Recycled]	• MF8380Cdw: 250 sheets • MF8080Cw: 150 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 50 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet
Color Paper*1	16 to 19 lb Bond (60 to 74 g/m²)	[Color]	• MF8380Cdw: 250 sheets • MF8080Cw: 150 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 50 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet
Coated Paper	28 to 29 lb Bond (100 to 110 g/m²)	[Glossy 1]*2	• MF8380Cdw: 50 sheets • MF8080Cw: 100 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 20 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet
	32 to 35 lb Bond (120 to 130 g/m²)	[Glossy 2]*2		
	40 lb Bond to 60 lb Cover (155 to 165 g/m²)	[Glossy 3]*2		
	77 to 80 lb Cover (210 to 220 g/m²)	[Glossy 4]	—	
Transparency*3		[Transparency]	• MF8380Cdw: 50 sheets • MF8080Cw: 50 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 20 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet
Label		[Labels]	• MF8380Cdw: 50 sheets • MF8080Cw: 50 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 20 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet
Index Card*4		[Heavy 2]	• MF8380Cdw: 50 sheets • MF8080Cw: 15 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 10 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet
Envelope		[Envelope]	• MF8380Cdw: 10 sheets • MF8080Cw: 10 sheets	• MF8380Cdw: 5 sheets • MF8080Cw: 1 sheet

*1 Only in MF8380Cdw, auto 2-sided print is available.
*2 Only in MF8080Cw, auto 2-sided print in A4 or LETTER size is available.
*3 Use only the transparencies designed for laser printers.
*4 You can use the index cards of the following sizes on the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot):
   • 4" x 6" (102.0 mm x 152.0 mm)
   • 5" x 8" (127.0 mm x 203.0 mm)

NOTE

About Chlorine-free paper

Chlorine-free paper can be used with this machine.

To prevent paper jams, do not use the following paper types.
• Wrinkled or creased paper
• Curled or rolled paper
• Torn paper
• Damp paper
• Very thin paper
• Paper printed by a thermal transfer printer (Do not copy on the reverse side.)

The following paper types do not print well:
• Highly textured paper
• Very smooth paper
• Glossy paper

Make sure that the paper is free of dust, lint, and oil stains.

Make sure to test print before purchasing large quantities of copy paper.

Keep the paper wrapped in its original package (unopened or opened) and stored in a cool, dry place until ready to use. Make sure to keep it on a flat surface.

Store paper stacks in a place where temperatures are somewhere between 64.4 to 75.2°F (18 to 24°C) and humidity is somewhere between 40 % to 60 % RH.

⚠ CAUTION

If you print on damp paper

The following problems may occur.
• Steam is emitted from the machine's output area.
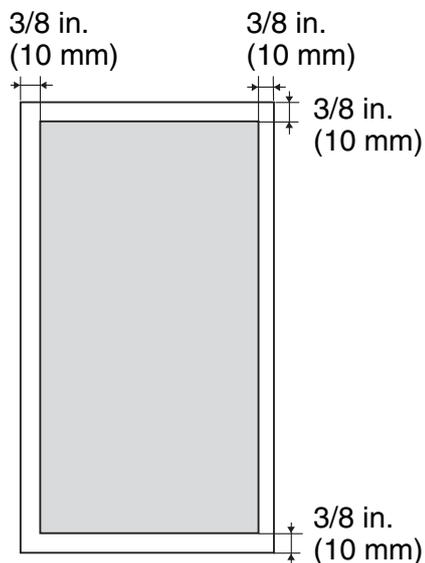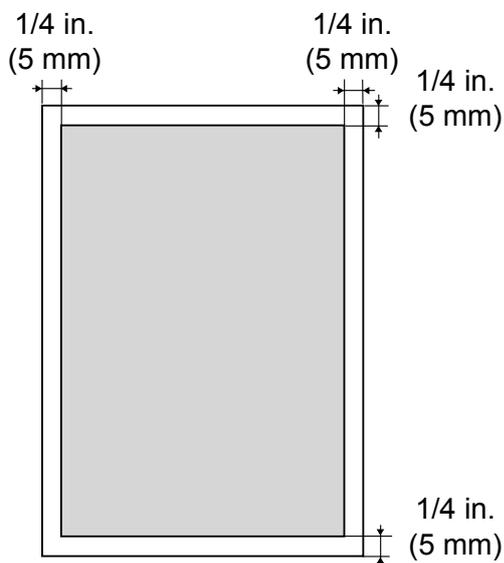• Water droplets form on the back side of the operation panel and in the output area.

Moisture evaporates from damp paper due to the heat generated inside the fixing unit (it is most likely to occur at low room temperatures). This is not a malfunction, but you can prevent this by using a stack of new unopened paper.

Should you smell something burning, immediately turn OFF the machine, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line. Continued use may lead to a fire or electrical shock.

Printable Area

The shaded area in the illustration on the following page represents the printable area.
Note that the margins indicated in the illustration are for your reference. Actual margins can vary.

* When an envelope is printed, the margin is 3/8" (10 mm) on top, bottom, right, and left.

1/4 in. (5 mm)   1/4 in. (5 mm)   1/4 in. (5 mm)

1/4 in. (5 mm)

3/8 in. (10 mm)   3/8 in. (10 mm)   3/8 in. (10 mm)

3/8 in. (10 mm)

NOTE ---

To enlarge the printable area

Apply the following setting from the printer driver.

1. Click [Advanced Setting] in the [Finishing] page of printer driver.
2. Set [Expand Print Region and Print] to [ON].
    *   Depending on the job, the data may not be printed in a part of document edge, or the bottom edge of paper or the following paper may be tainted.
    *   This setting is valid only when the job is printed from the printer driver.

Loading Paper

This section describes how to load paper in the paper cassette and the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot).

> **NOTE** -
>
> **If you use paper of a different size or type**
>
> The default paper size/type is set to <Letter> and <Plain 2> in the setting menu. If you use a different paper size or paper type, you need to change the paper settings.
>
> ▶ "Setting the Paper Size and Type" (→P.2-18)

In the Paper Cassette

Before loading paper in the paper cassette, see "Precautions when Loading Paper" (→P.2-14).

> **NOTE** -
>
> How to load the paper in the optional paper cassette (Cassette 2) (MF8380Cdw only): Same as in Cassette 1.

1 Pull out the paper cassette.

Hold the paper cassette with both hands.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8380Cdw**

2 Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual paper width.

(1) Slide the side paper guides.
Holding the lock release lever, slide the paper guides.
The side paper guides move together.
The lock release lever is not installed in MF8080Cw.

(2) Slide the paper guide at the front center.
Holding the lock release lever, slide the paper guides.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

When loading Legal size paper

Holding the lock release lever at the front right, adjust the length of the paper cassette.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

* If you want to change the size of the paper to be loaded, be sure to register the paper size in ▶ "Setting the Paper Size and Type" (→P.2-18).

3 Load the paper so that the edges of the paper stack are aligned with the rear side of the paper cassette.

Load the paper in portrait orientation.
▶ "Paper Loading Capacity" (→P.2-15)
▶ "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15)

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

IMPORTANT

<Precautions when loading small size paper>

If the paper is curled, flatten the paper and load it. If you do not flatten the paper, the printout may be printed askew or the images may be printed skewed.

NOTE

When loading paper with a letterhead or logo

See "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15), and load the paper in the proper orientation.

When loading envelopes

(1) Close the envelope flap.

(2) Place the stack of envelopes on a flat surface, flatten them to release any remaining air, and be sure that the edges are pressed tightly.

(3) Loosen any stiff corners of the envelopes and flatten curls as shown in the figure.

(4) Align the edges of the envelopes on a flat surface.

(5) Load the envelopes into the paper cassette with the print side up.

4 Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.

(1) Slide the side paper guides.
Holding the lock release lever, slide the paper guides to be aligned with the width of the loaded paper.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

(2) Slide the paper guide at the front center.
Holding the lock release lever, slide the paper guides to be aligned with the length of the loaded paper.

● **MF8380Cdw**

(2)

● **MF8080Cw**

(2)

✋ IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.

If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.

5 Hold down the paper, then set it under the hooks (A) on the paper guides.

Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the line of the load limit mark (B).

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

6 Insert the paper cassette into the machine.

Push it into the printer firmly.

When loading Legal size paper

When the paper cassette is inserted with it extended, the front side of the paper cassette is not flush with the front surface of the machine as shown in the figure.

Set the legal dust cover on the paper cassette.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

7 Specify the loaded paper size and type.

▶ "Setting the Paper Size and Type" (→P.2-18)

2-11

In the Multi-Purpose Tray (MF8380Cdw Only)

Before loading paper in the multi-purpose tray, see "Precautions when Loading Paper" (→P.2-14).

Use the multi-purpose tray when you want to copy or print on a paper that is different from what is in the paper cassette.

1 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Hold the handle at the center of the tray to open the multi-purpose tray.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to insert the paper cassette.

If the paper cassette is not inserted, you cannot print from the multi-purpose tray.

2 Pull out the auxiliary tray.

3 When loading long-size paper, open the tray extension.

4 Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual paper width.

5 Gently insert the paper into the multi-purpose tray until it stops with the print side up.

- Load the paper under the load limit guides (A).
- Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark (B).
- Load the paper in portrait orientation.
> "Paper Loading Capacity" (→P.2-15)
> "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15)

IMPORTANT

<Precautions when loading small size paper>

If the paper is curled, flatten the paper and load it. If you do not flatten the paper, the printout may be printed askew or the images may be printed skewed.
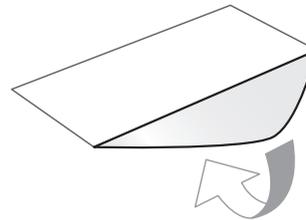
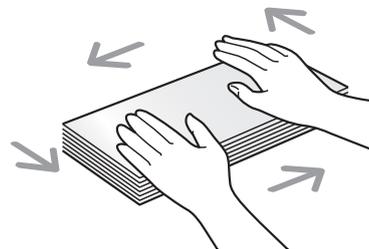#### NOTE

When loading paper with a letterhead or logo

See "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15), and load the paper in the proper orientation.
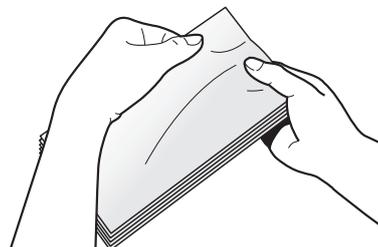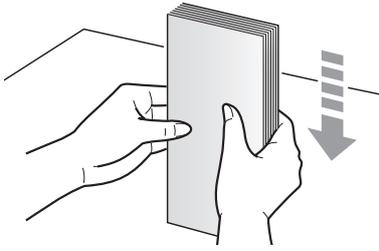
When loading envelopes

(1) Close the envelope flap.

(2) Place the stack of envelopes on a flat surface. Flatten the envelopes by releasing any remaining air and creasing the edges.

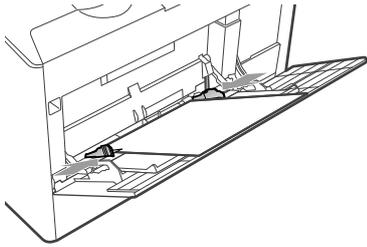(3) Loosen any stiff corners of the envelopes and flatten curls as shown in the figure.

(4) Align the edges of the envelopes on a flat surface.

(5) Gently insert the paper into the multi-purpose tray with the print side up.
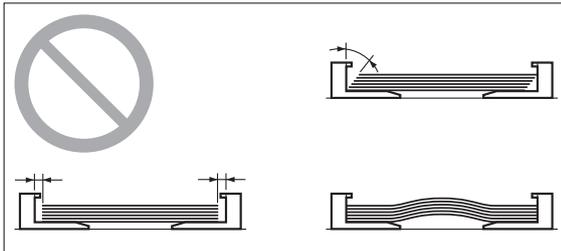
6 Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.

⏸ **IMPORTANT**

Be sure to align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.

If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
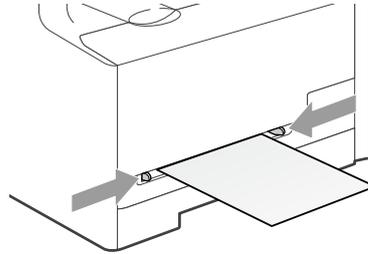

7 Specify the loaded paper size and type.

▷ "Setting the Paper Size and Type" (→P.2-18)

In the Manual Feed Slot (MF8080Cw Only)

Before loading paper in the manual feed slot, see "Precautions when Loading Paper" (→P.2-14).

Use the manual feed slot when you want to copy or print on a paper that is different from what is in the paper cassette.

1 Slide the paper guides to align them securely against the edges of the paper, then load the paper deeply to back of the tray.
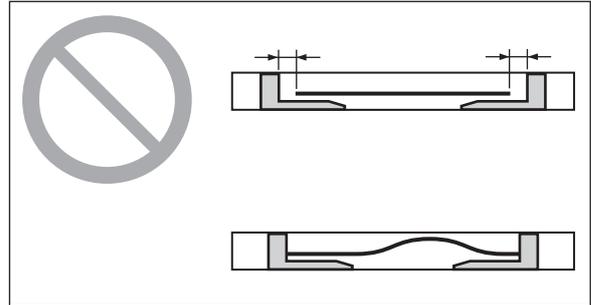

⏸ **IMPORTANT**

Be sure to insert the paper cassette.

If the paper cassette is not inserted, you cannot print from the manual feed slot.

Be sure to align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.

If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.

📝 **NOTE** -

When loading paper with a letterhead or logo

See "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15), and load the paper in the proper orientation.

- -

2 Support the paper with your hands as shown in the figure, and insert the paper until it touches the back of the tray.

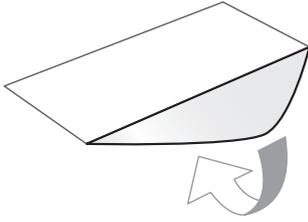When the paper touches the back of the tray, it is caught by the slot.

Only one sheet of the paper can be loaded in the manual feed slot.

▷ "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15)

2-13

When loading envelopes

Close the envelope flap.

3 Specify the loaded paper size and type.

▶ "Setting the Paper Size and Type" (→P.2-18)

Precautions when Loading Paper

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

Precautions when inserting the paper cassette
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

🖐 IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.

When using paper that has been poorly cut
If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack properly on a hard, flat surface.

Do not exceed the load limit mark when loading paper.
Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the line of the load limit mark. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

When printing on envelopes
Load envelopes with the front side (non-glued side) facing up. You cannot print on the reverse side of envelopes.
Also, be sure to close the flap before loading envelopes.

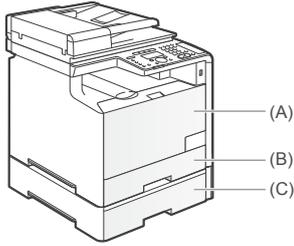### 🖋 NOTE

For more information on supported paper types
▶ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)

Abbreviations on the paper guides inside the paper cassette

Paper size	Paper guide
Legal	LGL
Letter	LTR
Executive	EXEC

Paper Loading Capacity

● **MF8380Cdw**

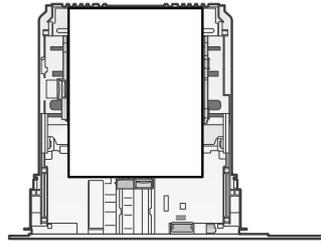| Paper Type	Paper source		
	(A) Multi-purpose tray	(B) Cassette 1	(C) Cassette 2 (optional)
Plain paper (Ex. 21 lb Bond (80 g/m²))	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 25 lb Bond (91 g/m²))	Approx. 30 sheets	Approx. 200 sheets	Approx. 200 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 34 lb Bond (128 g/m²))	Approx. 20 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets
Transparency (black and white printing only)	Approx. 20 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets
Label	Approx. 20 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets
Coated paper	Approx. 20 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets
Envelope	Approx. 5 sheets	Approx. 10 sheets	Approx. 10 sheets

● **MF8080Cw**

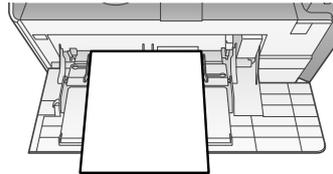| Paper type	Paper source	
	(A) Manual feed slot	(B) Cassette 1
Plain paper (Ex. 21 lb Bond (80 g/m²))	1 sheet	Approx. 150 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 25 lb Bond (91 g/m²))	1 sheet	Approx. 120 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 34 lb Bond (128 g/m²)	1 sheet	Approx. 100 sheets
Transparency (black-and-white printing only)	1 sheet	Approx. 50 sheets
Label	1 sheet	Approx. 50 sheets
Coated paper	1 sheet	Approx. 100 sheets
Envelope	1 sheet	Approx. 10 sheets

Paper Loading Orientation
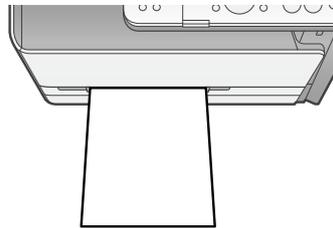
Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation.

● **Paper cassette**
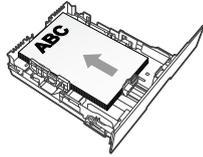

● **Multi-purpose tray (MF8380Cdw only)**

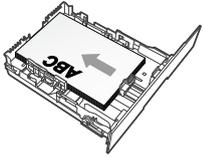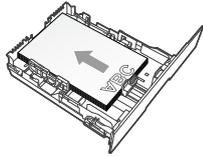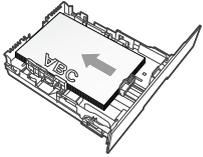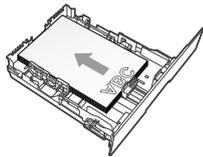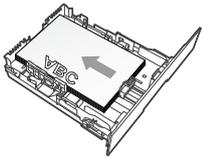● **Manual feed slot (MF8080Cw only)**

When printing paper with a letterhead or logo (previously printed paper)

Load the paper in the proper orientation as follows.
(➡ : Feeding direction)

Paper cassette

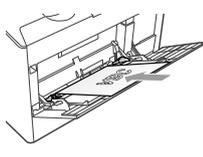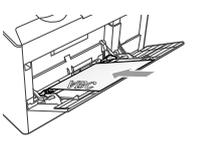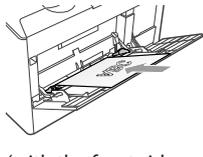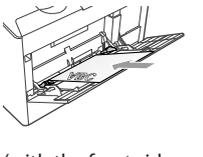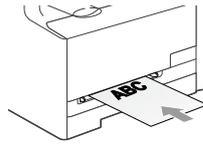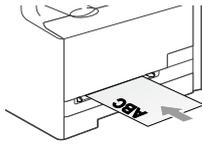|	Portrait layout	Landscape layout
1-sided printing (When "Selecting the Print Side (MF8380Cdw Only)"(→P.2-21) is set to <Print Speed Priority> (the default setting))	(with the printing side facing up)	(with the printing side facing up)
1-sided printing (When "Selecting the Print Side (MF8380Cdw Only)"(→P.2-21) is set to <Print Side Priority>)	(with the printing side facing down)	(with the printing side facing down)
Automatic 2-sided Printing (MF8380Cdw Only)	(with the front side facing down)	(with the front side facing down)

Multi-purpose tray (MF8380Cdw Only)

	Portrait layout	Landscape layout
1-sided printing (When "Selecting the Print Side (MF8380Cdw Only)"(→P.2-21) is set to <Print Speed Priority> (the default setting))	(with the printing side facing up)	(with the printing side facing up)
1-sided printing (When "Selecting the Print Side (MF8380Cdw Only)"(→P.2-21) is set to <Print Side Priority>)	(with the printing side facing down)	(with the printing side facing down)
Automatic 2-sided Printing	(with the front side facing down)	(with the front side facing down)

Manual feed slot (MF8080Cw Only)

	Portrait layout	Landscape layout
1-sided printing	(with the printing side facing up)	(with the printing side facing up)

Printing on Envelopes

Load envelopes with the front side (non-glued side) facing up as follows.
(➡ : Feeding direction)

Paper cassette

Envelope Monarch*, No.10, DL, ISO-C5
Load the envelopes so that the flap is toward the left of the paper cassette when they are viewed from the front.

Close the flap and load the envelope.

* You can load Envelope Monarch in the paper cassette only for MF8080Cw.

Envelope ISO-B5
Load the envelopes so that the flap is toward the back of the paper cassette when they are viewed from the front.

Close the flap and load the envelope.

Multi-purpose tray (MF8380Cdw Only)

Envelope Monarch, No.10, DL, ISO-C5
Load the envelopes so that the flap is toward the left of the machine when it is viewed from the front.

Close the flap and load the envelope.

2-16

Document and Paper Handling

Envelope ISO-B5

Load the envelopes so that the flap is toward the back of the machine when it is viewed from the front.

Close the flap and load the envelope.

Manual feed slot (MF8080Cw Only)

Envelope Monarch, No.10, DL, ISO-C5

Load the envelopes so that the flap is toward the left of the machine when it is viewed from the front.

Close the flap and load the envelope.

Envelope ISO-B5
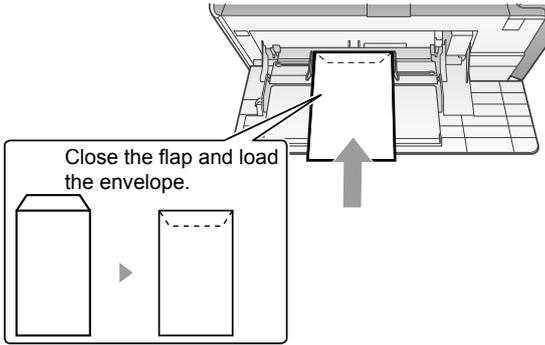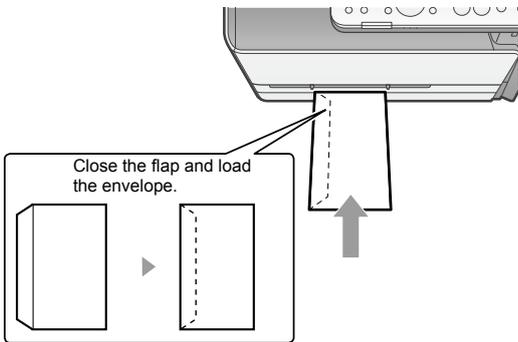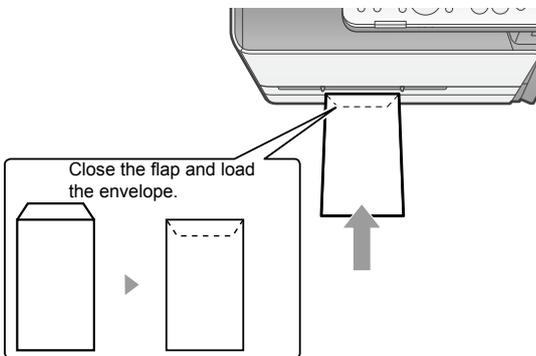
Load the envelopes so that the flap is toward the back of the machine when it is viewed from the front.

Close the flap and load the envelope.

Setting the Paper Size and Type

Whenever you change the paper size and type loaded in the cassette and the tray, follow the procedure in this section to adjust the paper size and type settings for the cassette and the tray.
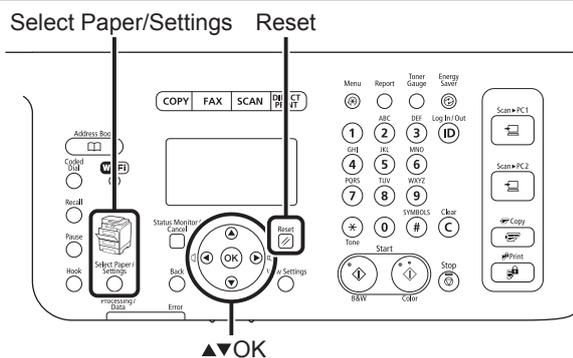
✋ IMPORTANT

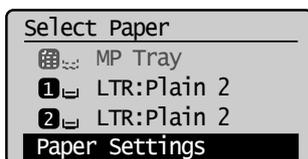**If the setting is different from the size of the loaded paper**

An error message appears, or printing is not performed correctly.

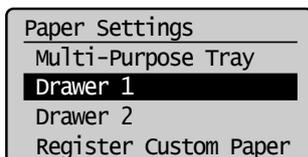## For the Paper Cassette

Keys to be used for this operation

Select Paper/Settings   Reset

▲▼OK

1 Press [◯] (Select Paper/Settings).

2 Select <Paper Settings> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Select Paper
🗐⌁ MP Tray
❶ ▭ LTR:Plain 2
❷ ▭ LTR:Plain 2
Paper Settings
```

3 Select <Drawer 1> or <Drawer 2> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

<Drawer 2> is displayed only when the optional paper cassette (Cassete 2) is installed in MF8380Cdw.

```
Paper Settings
 Multi-Purpose Tray
 Drawer 1
 Drawer 2
 Register Custom Paper
```

4 Select a paper size with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

* When registering the custom paper, see ▷ "Registering a Custom Paper Size" (→P.2-19).

* The registered custom paper is listed at the top. Select it with [▲].

```
Paper Size
 LTR
 LGL
 STMT
 EXEC
```

5 Select a paper type with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Paper Type
 Plain 2 (19 lb Bond-
 Recycled
 Color
 Heavy 1 (24 lb Bond...
```

6 Press [🖉] (Reset) to return to standby mode.

Registering the Default Paper Settings for the Multi-purpose Tray (Manual Feed Slot)

If you want to always load the same paper in the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot), register the default paper using the following procedure.

🖊 NOTE

If the default paper is registered

The setting screen is not displayed when paper is loaded.

Keys to be used for this operation

Select Paper/Settings   Reset   Numeric keys

▲▼OK

1 Press [◯] (Select Paper/Settings).

2 Select <Paper Settings> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Select Paper
🗐⌁ MP Tray
❶ ▭ LTR:Plain 2
❷ ▭ LTR:Plain 2
Paper Settings
```

3 Select <Multi-Purpose Tray> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Paper Settings
Multi-Purpose Tray
 Drawer 1
 Drawer 2
 Register Custom Paper
```

4 Select <On> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Register Default Set.
 Off
 On
 Set Details
```

5 Select <Paper Settings> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Select Paper
  ▤ᵤLTR:Plain 2
  ❶ᵤLTR:Plain 2
  ❷ᵤLTR:Plain 2
 Paper Settings
```

6 Select <Multi-Purpose Tray> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Paper Settings
Multi-Purpose Tray
 Drawer 1
 Drawer 2
 Register Custom Paper
```

7 Select <Set Details> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].
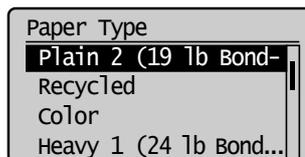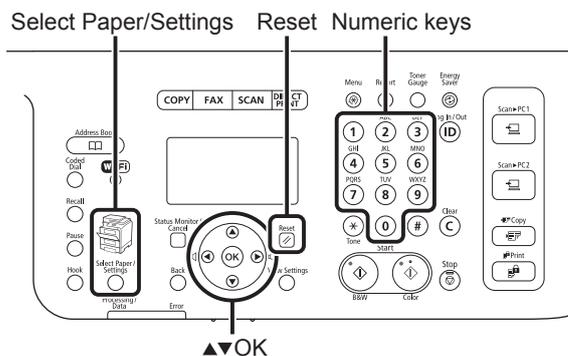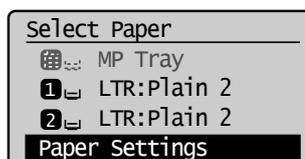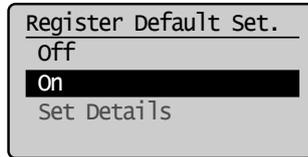
```
Register Default Set.
 Off
 On
 Set Details
```

8 Select a paper size with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

* When registering the custom paper, see ▶ "Registering a Custom Paper Size" (→P.2-19).
* The registered custom paper is listed at the top. Select it with [▲].

```
Paper Size
 LTR
 LGL
 STMT
 EXEC
```

If you select <Custom Size>
Specifies the size of <X> direction and <Y> direction of the custom paper.
　(1) Select the direction with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Specify Size
 X     <Apply>
       X: 0  "
   Y   Y: 0  "
```

　(2) Specify the size with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Set Length for X
       ▲
      3_0/0   "
       ▼
      (3-8_1/2)
```

　(3) Select <Apply> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Specify Size
 X     <Apply>
       X: 3  "
   Y   Y: 5  "
```

9 Select the paper type with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Paper Type
Plain 2 (19 lb Bond-
 Recycled
 Color
 Heavy 1 (24 lb Bond...
```

10 Press [✎] (Reset) to return to standby mode.

Registering a Custom Paper Size

You can register sizes and types of frequently used paper. Registered paper is displayed when paper settings are specified for each paper source.

• Paper cassette
　Paper size setting screen

```
Paper Size
1. 7 x 9  "
 LTR
 LGL
 STMT
```

▶ "For the Paper Cassette" (→P.2-18)

• Multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot)
　- When <Register Default Set.> is set to <Off> (default)
　　The screen to be displayed when paper is loaded in the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot)

```
Paper Size (MP Tray)
1. 7 x 9  "
 LTR
 LGL
 STMT
```

- When < Register Default Set.> is set to <On>
  Paper size setting screen

```
Paper Size (MP Tray)
1. 7 x 9 "
 LTR
 LGL
 STMT
```

▶"Registering the Default Paper Settings for the Multi-purpose Tray
(Manual Feed Slot)" (→P.2-18)

Keys to be used for this operation

Select Paper/Settings   Reset   Numeric keys

▲▼OK

1 Press [◯] (Select Paper/Settings).

2 Select <Paper Settings> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Select Paper
⊞    MP Tray
❶   LTR:Plain 2
❷   LTR:Plain 2
Paper Settings
```

3 Select <Register Custom Paper> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Paper Settings
 Multi-Purpose Tray
 Drawer 1
 Drawer 2
 Register Custom Paper
```

4 Select <Not Registered> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

When selecting the registered custom paper, you can edit and delete the custom paper.

```
Register Custom Paper
 1. Not Registered
 2. Not Registered
 3. Not Registered
```

5 Specifies the size of <X> direction and <Y> direction.

(1) Select the direction with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Specify Size
 X     <Apply>
       X: 0 "
    Y  Y: 0 "
```

(2) Specify the size with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].
You can also enter values using the numeric keys when entering in millimeter.

```
Set Length for X
       ▲
     3.0/0   "
       ▼
    (3-8_1/2)
```

(3) Select <Apply> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Specify Size
 X     <Apply>
       X: 3 "
    Y  Y: 5 "
```

6 Select the paper type with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Paper Type
 Plain 2 (19 lb Bond-
 Recycled
 Color
 Heavy 1 (24 lb Bond...
```

7 Press [⧄] (Reset) to return to standby mode.

Selecting the Print Side (MF8380Cdw Only)

Specify whether to print only on the front side of paper for 1-sided printing so that the odd pages are always printed on the front side for both 1-sided and 2-sided printing.
The print side for 1-sided printing varies depending on the setting specified. To use preprinted paper, read ▶ "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15) carefully to place the paper stack in the correct orientation.

✋ IMPORTANT

Paper Size and Paper Type

If you select unsupported paper size or paper type for 2-sided printing, the settings applied in this section will be invalid.

When <Print Speed Priority> is selected (the default setting)

All pages (odd and even) are printed on the back side for 1-sided printing while the odd pages are printed on the first side for 2-sided printing, as shown below.

* Make sure to place the stack correctly to use preprinted paper, as the side to be placed face up varies between 1-sided and 2-sided printing.

	Front	Back					
1-sided printing		1		2		3		4
2-sided printing	1	2	3	4			

Select this setting when

- using paper types other than preprinted paper
- using preprinted paper only for 1-sided printing

When <Print Side Priority> is selected

All pages are printed on the first side for 1-sided printing so the odd pages are always printed on the first side for both 1-sided and 2-sided printing, as shown below.

* The side to be placed face up is the same between 1-sided and 2-sided printing, even when using preprinted paper.

	Front	Back					
1-sided printing	1		2		3		4	
2-sided printing	1	2	3	4			

Select this setting when

- using preprinted paper for both 1-sided and 2-sided printing

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [(⊛)] (Menu).

2 Select <Common Settings> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Menu
 Network Settings
 Preferences
 Timer Settings
 Common Settings
```

3 Select <Switch Paper Feed Method> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Common Settings
 Drawer Auto Selection
 Switch Paper Feed Me..
```

4 Select the paper source to specify with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

<Drawer 2> is displayed only when the optional paper cassette (Cassette 2) is installed in MF8380Cdw.

```
Paper Feed Method
 Multi-Purpose Tray
 Drawer 1
 Drawer 2
```

5 Select <Print Speed Priority> or <Print Side Priority> with [▲] or [▼], and then press [OK].

```
Multi-Purpose Tray
 Print Speed Priority
 Print Side Priority
```

<Print Speed Priority>	When specifying <Print Speed Priority>, load paper as follows. (➡: Feeding direction) * For details on the procedure for loading paper when using multi-purpose tray or when printing pages of the landscape layout, see "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15). **When performing 1-sided printing** | **When performing 2-sided printing** Load paper with the printing side facing up. | Load paper with the front side (first page) facing down.
<Print Side Priority>	When specifying <Print Side Priority>, load paper as follows. (➡: Feeding direction) * For details on the procedure for loading paper when using multi-purpose tray or when printing pages of the landscape layout, see "Paper Loading Orientation" (→P.2-15). The procedure for loading paper is the same for 2-sided printing and 1-sided printing. • When performing 1-sided printing, load paper with the printing side facing down. • When performing 2-sided printing, load paper with the front side (first page) facing down.

6 Press [🛞] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Chapter | **3**

Copying

This chapter describes how to use the copy functions.

● Basic Copy Operations

This section describes the basic procedure for copying.

1 **Place your document.**
- ▶ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
- ▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)
- * Up to 50 documents can be loaded into the feeder.

2 **Press [COPY].**

4 **Enter the copy quantity (1 to 99) using numeric keys.**
- * Press [C] (Clear) to cancel the entered quantity.

3 **Specify the copy settings as needed.**
You can specify up to 9 items.
(for details, see P.3-4 to P.3-9.)

1 Paper select
2 Density
3 Document Type
4 2-Sided
5 Enlarging/Reducing

6 N on 1
7 Collating
8 Frame erase
9 Sharpness

5 **Press [◈] (Color) or [◈] (B & W).**
For color copy, press [◈] (Color).
For black and white copy, press [◈] (B & W).

✎ **NOTE** -

Copy Settings
- When you combine multiple settings for use, see "Combination of Copy Settings" (→P.3-4).
- The settings specified here are effective only for the current operation. To make the settings effective for all the copy operations, see "Changing the Default Settings" (→P.3-14).
- Register your frequently used settings into the Mode Memory. It is useful. See "Registering and Using Combination of Copy Settings (Mode Memory)" (→P.3-12).

- -

Checking and Canceling Copy Jobs

Check the details of copy jobs. Cancel copy jobs that you decide not to perform while the jobs are processing.

NOTE ---

When the processing/Data indicator on the operation panel is:

Turned on/blinking	A job is currently processing.
Turned off	No jobs are waiting in memory.

Canceling a copy job using [⊚] (Stop)

1 Press [⊚] (Stop).

* Press [⊚] (Stop) twice to cancel the job when the machine holds one job only.

2 Select the job that you want to cancel when more than one job is processing using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

3 Select <Yes> using [▲] or [▼] when <Cancel?> appears and press [OK].

Or, press [⊚] (Stop) to cancel the job.
The job is canceled.

```
Cancel?
 <No>
 <Yes>
 Details
```

* Select <Details> using [▲] or [▼] to check the details of the job that you want to cancel and press [OK].

Checking and canceling a copy job using [☐] (Status Monitor/Cancel)

1 Press [☐] (Status Monitor/Cancel).

2 Select <Copy/Print Job> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Device Status
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
```

3 Select <Job Status> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Copy/Print Job
 Job Status
 Copy Job History
 Print Job History
```

4 Select a job using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

The details of the selected job are displayed.

```
Details
 <Cancel>
 Job Number: 0001
 Status: Copying
 Time: 01/01 12:52AM
```

To cancel the job

(1) Select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Details
 <Cancel>
 Job Number: 0001
 Status: Copying
 Time: 01/01 12:52AM
```

(2) Select <Yes> using [◄] and press [OK].
The job is canceled.

```
Cancel?

 Yes      No
```

(3) Press [☐] (Status Monitor/Cancel) to close the screen.

To only check the details of the selected job

Press [☐] (Status Monitor/Cancel) after you have checked the details of the selected job to close the screen.

Copy Settings

Combination of Copy Settings

You can combine and use various copy settings.
This applies to Mode Memory registration and default value settings (→P. 3-14) as well.
However, the following limitation is found in the setting combination.

<No. of Copies>	-
<Density>	-
<Original Type>	-
<2-Sided> (MF8380Cdw Only)	• Depending on its paper size or paper type in the selected paper source, 2-sided copy is not available. ▶ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6) • This feature cannot be combined with <ID Card Copy>.
<Copy Ratio>	• When you want to copy documents in a reduction ratio different from its default value for <4 on 1>/<2 on 1>, specify the <Copy Ratio> later. • <Copy Ratio> is fixed at 100 % for <ID Card Copy>. • The frame width specified at <Erase Frame> increases/decreases according to the <Copy Ratio> setting.
<Paper>	Depending on its document size (selected paper source), 2-sided copy is not available.
<4 on 1>/ <2 on 1>	• If you want to copy a document in a copy ratio different from its default reduction ratio, specify the <Copy Ratio> later. • This feature cannot be combined with <Erase Frame>.
<ID Card Copy>	• <Copy Ratio> is fixed at 100%. • This feature cannot be combined with either 2-Sided Copy or <Erase Frame>.
<Collate>	-
<Erase Frame>	• This feature cannot be combined with N on 1 (<4 on 1>/<2 on 1>, <ID Card Copy>). • The specified erase frame width increases/decreases according to the <Copy Ratio> setting.
<Sharpness>	-

1 Selecting Copy Papers

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶▭LTR        1
Density: ±0
Original Type: Text…
2-Sided: Off
```

Select Paper/
Settings

Setting screen*

```
Select Paper
 ▤▭ LTR:Plain
 ❶▭ LTR:Plain
 Paper Settings
```

* You can display the setting screen also by selecting <Paper> in the copy mode screen.

Select the paper source using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

Copy Settings

2 Adjusting the Density

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start
100% 1 ⏚LTR        1
Density: ±0
Original Type: Text...
2-Sided: Off
```

● **Density adjustment**

Setting screen*

```
Density
-□□□□■□□□□+
Background: Default
Color Balance: Defau...
```

| [◀] | Decrease the density. |
| [▶] | Increase the density. |

Adjust the density with [◀] or [▶] → [OK]

● **Background Adjustment**

Setting screen

```
Density
-□□□□■□□□□+
Background: Default
Color Balance: Defau...
```

Select <Background> with [▲] or [▼]

▼ (OK)

Select <Adjustment> with [▲] or [▼]

```
Background
Off
Adjustment
```

| <Off> | Does not adjust the background density. |
| <Adjustment> | Adjusts the background density. ▷ The next step |

▼ (OK)

Adjust the density with [◀] or [▶] → [OK]

```
Adjustment
-□□□□□□■□□+
Adjust by Color
```

| [◀] | Makes the background density lighter. |
| [▶] | Makes the background density darker. |

If adjusting the density for each color
(1) **Select [Adjust by Color] with [▲] or [▼] → [OK]**

```
Adjustment
-□□□□□□■□□+
Adjust by Color
```

(2) Select a color for which you want to adjust the density with [▲] or [▼] → [OK]
(3) Adjust the density with [◀] or [▶] → [OK]
   • [◀] Makes the background color density lighter.
   • [▶] Makes the background color density darker.
(4) Select [Apply] with [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

● **Adjusting the color**

Setting screen*

```
Density
-□□□□■□□□□+
Background: Default
Color Balance: Defaul
```

Select <Color Balance> with [▲] or [▼]

▼ (OK)

Select a color for which you want to adjust the color balance with [▲] or [▼]

```
Color Balance
<Apply>
Yellow: ±0
Magenta: ±0
Cyan: ±0
```

▼ (OK)

Adjust the color balance with [◀] or [▶]

```
Yellow

-□□□□□□□□■□□□□□□□+
```

| [◀] | Makes the color lighter. |
| [▶] | Makes the color darker. |

▼ (OK)

Select [Apply] with [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

Copying

3-5

Copy Settings

3 Selecting the Document Type

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start
 100% 1⎵LTR      1
 Density: ±0
 Original Type: Text/
 2-Sided: Off
```

Select <Original Type> using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

Setting screen

```
Original Type
 Text
 Text/Photo
 Text/Photo (Quality)
 Photo
```

Select the appropriate document type using [▲] or [▼]→[OK]

<Text/Photo/ Map (Speed)>	This option is suitable for documents that contain text and photos or fine diagrams and text such as maps. This option scans the document at a low resolution for color copy.
<Text/Photo/ Map>	This option is suitable for documents that contain text and photos or fine diagrams and text such as maps.
<Text/Photo/ Map (Quality)>	This option is suitable for documents that contain text and photos or fine diagrams and text such as maps. This option scans the document at a high resolution. You can set the image quality priority to text or photos.
<Printed Image>	This option is suitable for documents that contain photos printed in a magazine.
<Text>	This option is suitable for documents that contain text without photos or illustrations.

When selecting <Text/Photo/Map (Quality)>

Adjust priority using [◀] or [▶]→[OK]

```
Adjust Level
 ▤Text Priority
 ◉Photo Priority

 ▤ □□□□■□□□□ ◉
```

[◀]	Prioritize text readability.
[▶]	Prioritize illustration readability such as photos.

Copy Settings

4 2-Sided Copying (MF8380Cdw Only)

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⊔LTR          1
Density: ±0
Original Type: Text/
2-Sided: Off
```

Setting screen

```
2-Sided
  Off
  1→2-Sided
  2→2-Sided
  2→1-Sided
```

Press [▲] or [▼] to select the 2-Sided copy format → [OK]

<1→2-sided>	Copy a 1-sided document onto both sides of the output.
<2→2-sided>	You can make 2-sided copies from 2-sided documents.
<2→1-sided>	You can make 1-sided copies from 2-sided documents.

If you want to specify how to open original or copy

(1) Select <Format Settings> with [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
2-Sided
  1→2-Sided
  2→2-Sided
  2→1-Sided
  Format Settings
```

(2) Select <2->2-Sided> with [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Format Settings
  1→2-Sided
  2→2-Sided
  2→1-Sided
```

(3) Select the orientation of the original document with [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Original Orientation
  Portrait
  Landscape
```

(4) Select how to open the original document with [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Original Format
  Book Type
  Calendar Type
```

(5) Select how to open the output with [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Finishing Format
  Book Type
  Calendar Type
```

To copy a document by placing on the platen glass

(1) Place the next page and press [⊚] (Color) or [⊚] (B & W).

 * Repeat this step until all pages are scanned.

(2) Select <Start Copying> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Scan Next: Press Start
  <Start Copying>
  <Cancel>
  SheetxCopy:1x1
  Density: ±0
```

Copy Settings

5 Enlarging/Reducing Copies

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start     1
100% 1 ⊔LTR
Original Type: Text...
2-Sided: Off
Copy Ratio: 100% Dir
```

Select <Copy Ratio> using [▲] or [▼]
→ [OK]

Setting screen

```
Copy Ratio
  Custom Ratio
  100% Direct
  400% Max
  200%
```

Select the copy ratio using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

⬇

Load paper of the output size (→P. 2-9)

⬇

Register the output paper size (→P. 2-18)

Enlarge or reduce copies using preset copy ratios or custom copy ratios. For example, you can copy a Statement size document on Letter size paper using a preset ratio, or set any copy ratio from 25% to 400% in 1% increments.

To set a copy ratio in 1% increments

(1) Select <Custom Ratio> using [▲] or [▼] →
[OK]

```
Copy Ratio
  Custom Ratio
  100% Direct
  400% Max
  200%
```

(2) Specify the ratio using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]
You can also enter the copy ratio using the numeric keys.

```
Custom Ratio
         ▲
        100  %
         ▼
      (25–400)
```

6 Copying Multiple Documents onto One Sheet (N on 1)

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start     1
100% 1 ⊔LTR
Copy Ratio: 100% Di...
Paper: 1 ⊔ LTR:Plain
N on 1: Off
```

Select <N on 1> using [▲] or [▼]→[OK]

Setting screen

```
N on 1
  Off
  2 on 1
  4 on 1
  ID Card Copy
```

Select <2 on 1> or <4 on 1> using [▲] or [▼]→[OK]

<2 on 1>	Copy two pages onto one sheet.
<4 on 1>	Copy four pages onto one sheet.

About margins on the document
To copy in the N on 1 mode, margins are created on the output.

To specify the layout
(1) Select <Select Layout> using [▲] or [▼]
→ [OK]
(2) Select the layout using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

```
Select Layout
  2 on 1 (1)
  2 on 1 (2)
  4 on 1 (1)
  4 on 1 (2)
```

When your document is placed on the platen glass
(1) Set the next document and press [⊚]
(Color) or [⊚] (B & W).
* Repeat this step until all pages are scanned.
(2) Select <Start Copying> using [▲] or [▼]
and press [OK].

```
Scan Next: Press Start
  <Start Copying>
  <Cancel>
  SheetxCopy:1x1
  Density: ±0
```

⬇

```
Scan Size
  LTR
  LGL
  STMT
```

Select the size of the document using [▲] or [▼]→[OK]

⬇

```
Output Size
  ▤ ⊔ LTR:Plain
  1 ⊔ LTR:Plain
```

Select an output size using [▲] or [▼]→[OK]

Copy Settings

7 Collating Copies

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⎵LTR        1
Paper:❶⎵ LTR:Plain
N on 1: Off
Collate: Off
```

Select <Collate> using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

Setting screen

```
Collate
 Off
 On
```

Select <On> using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

<Off>	Printouts of a complete job are grouped. For example, if you are copying three copies of a three-page document, printouts of a complete job are grouped and arranged in this page order: "1, 1, 1", "2, 2, 2", "3, 3, 3."	
<On>	Printouts of a complete job are collated. For example, if you are copying three copies of a three-page document, printouts of a complete job are grouped and arranged in this page order: "1, 2, 3", "1, 2, 3", "1, 2, 3."	

8 Erasing Dark Borders or Frame Lines (Frame Erase)

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⎵LTR        1
N on 1: Off
Collate: On
Erase Frame: Off
```

Select <Erase Frame> using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

Setting screen

```
Erase Frame
 Off
 On
```

Select <On> using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

```
Specify Frame Width
        ▲
     0_1/8  "
        ▼
   (1/16-1_15/16)
```

Select the frame width to be erased using [▲] or [▼] → [OK] You can also enter the frame width to be erased using the numeric keys.

```
Scan Size
 LTR
 LGL
 STMT
```

Select the size of the original document using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

9 Emphasizing the Outline of an Image (Sharpness)

Copy mode screen

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⎵LTR        1
Collate: On
Erase Frame: Off
Sharpness: ±0
```

Select <Sharpness> using [▲] or [▼] → [OK]

Setting screen

```
Sharpness

- □□□■□□□+
```

Adjust the sharpness using [◄] or [►] → [OK]

[◄]	To clearly capture halftone photos, adjust this setting to the appropriate level on the <-> scale. This can counteract the effect of moiré patterns (uneven gradation and striped patterns).
[►]	To clearly capture text or lines, adjust this setting to the appropriate level on the <+> scale. It is best suited for copying blueprints and very weak pencil manuscripts.

Copying an ID Card

Copy a 2-sided card onto one side of paper.

Keys to be used for this operation

▲▼OK   Start

1 Place a card on the platen glass and close the feeder or the platen glass cover.

Place the card with spacing of 1/4" (5 mm) from the left edge of the platen glass.
Align the center of the card with the arrow mark, as shown below.

To place the card horizontally	
To place the card vertically	

2 Press [COPY].

3 Select <N on 1> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Copy: Press Start      1
 100% ❶▭LTR
 Copy Ratio: 100% Di...
 Paper:❶▭ LTR:Plain
 N on 1: Off
```

4 Select <ID Card Copy> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
N on 1
 Off
 2 on 1
 4 on 1
 ID Card Copy
```

5 Press [⊕] (Color) or [⊕] (B & W).

Proceed to the next step when the scan is complete.

6 Turn sides.

Place the card with spacing of 1/4" (5 mm) from the left edge of the platen glass.
Align the center of the card with the arrow mark, as shown below.

To place the card horizontally	
To place the card vertically	

7 Press [⊕] (Color) or [⊕] (B & W).

🔔 NOTE --

To place your document (card) on the platen glass
Place the card on the left half of the platen glass.

Copy ratio
The copy ratio is automatically set to <100%>.

Supported paper sizes
Sizes larger than A4/Letter

Copying by Saving Paper

Press [📇] (Paper Save Copy) to save paper when making a copy.
Choose one of the following four combinations of 2 on 1/4 on 1 and 2-Sided copy settings, as shown in the table below.

	N on 1	2-Sided		
	Select Layout	Format Settings	Original Orientation	Original Format
2 on 1 1->2-Sided (MF8380 only)	⬛⬛	1->2-Sided	Portrait	Book Type
4 on 1 1->2-Sided (MF8380 only)	⬛⬛	1->2-Sided	Portrait	Book Type
2 on 1 1->1-Sided	⬛⬛	OFF		
4 on 1 1->1-Sided	⬛⬛	OFF		

⚠ IMPORTANT

Precautions on 2-Sided Copying

Do not touch your document when making 2-sided copying until the process is complete. After copying on the front side is complete, the document is partially output, reserved, and fed into the machine again for copying on the back side.

Keys to be used for this operation

Paper Save Copy

▲▼OK   Start

1 Place your document.

▶ "Placing Documents" (→P. 2-4)
▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P. 2-2)

2 Press [📇] (Paper Save Copy).

3 Select the combination that you want to use using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Paper Save Copy
 2 on 1 1➡2-Sided
 4 on 1 1➡2-Sided
 2 on 1 1➡1-Sided
 4 on 1 1➡1-Sided
```

4 Select the document size using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Scan Size
 LTR
 LGL
 STMT
```

5 Press [◎] (Color) or [◎] (B & W).

When the document is placed on the platen glass

(1) Place the next page and press [◎] (Color) or [◎] (B & W).

 * Repeat this step until all pages are scanned.

(2) Select <Start Copying> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
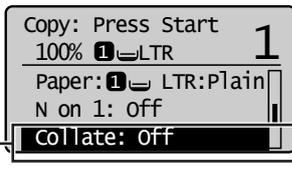
```
Scan Next: Press Start
 <Start Copying>
 <Cancel>
 SheetxCopy:1x1
 Density: ±0
```

Registering and Using Combination of Copy Settings (Mode Memory)

You can register up to four combinations of frequently used copy settings to the "Mode memory" in advance.

✋ IMPORTANT

Registered settings of Mode Memory

- Registered settings in the Mode Memory are saved even during power OFF.
- When settings which require optional products are registered in a Mode Memory, the memory becomes unavailable if that optional product is removed, but its settings remain saved.
- When an optional cassette usage is registered in a Mode Memory, the paper feeding setting is changed to Cassette 1 if that optional cassette is removed. (MF8380Cdw Only)

Registering Mode Memory

Keys to be used for this operation

COPY

▲▼◀OK

1 Press [COPY].

2 Select <Mode Memory> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⊔LTR        1
Erase Frame: Off
Sharpness: ±0
Mode Memory: Off
```

3 Select <Register/Delete> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Mode Memory
Register/Delete
Mode 1
Mode 2
Mode 3
```

4 Select the place to register using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

* Select any registered place, then you can edit settings.

```
Register/Delete
Mode 1
Mode 2
Mode 3
Mode 4
```

5 Select items to specify using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Mode 1
<Apply>
<Delete>
No. of Copies: 1
Density: ±0
```

For details on the settings, see ▶ "Copy Settings" (→P.3-7).

6 Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] after you have specified the setting and press [OK].

```
Mode 1
<Apply>
<Delete>
No. of Copies: 1
Density: ±0
```

7 Select <Yes> using [◀] and press [OK].

```
Register?

Yes        No
```

* Follow the same steps for overwriting settings as well.

Deleting Mode Memory

Keys to be used for this operation

COPY

▲▼◀OK

1 Press [COPY].

2 Select <Mode Memory> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⊔LTR          1
Erase Frame: Off
Sharpness: ±0
Mode Memory: Off
```

3 Select <Register/Delete> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Mode Memory
Register/Delete
Mode 1
Mode 2
Mode 3
```

4 Select a Mode Memory to delete using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register/Delete
Mode 1
Mode 2
Mode 3
Mode 4
```

5 Select <Delete> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Mode 1
 <Apply>
 <Delete>
 No. of Copies: 1
 Density: ±0
```

6 Select <Yes> using [◀] and press [OK].

```
Delete?

   Yes        No
```

Calling and Copying Mode Memory

📋 NOTE -

Calling Mode Memory
- When a new Mode Memory is called, all copy settings are replaced with that Mode Memory settings.
- After the Mode Memory is called, you can change the settings as you like.

- -

COPY

▲▼OK   Start

1 Place your document.

▷ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
▷ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 Press [COPY].

3 Select <Mode Memory> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Copy: Press Start
100% ❶⊔LTR          1
Erase Frame: Off
Sharpness: ±0
Mode Memory: Off
```

4 Select a Mode Memory to call using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

* From Mode 1 to Mode 4, you cannot select any Mode Memory which is not registered.

```
Mode Memory
Mode 1
Mode 2
Mode 3
Mode 4
```

5 Press [🔘] (Color) or [🔘] (B & W).

Copying

3-13

Changing the Default Settings

The default settings are a set of standard settings predetermined by the machine. These settings become effective when the machine is turned OFF and ON, or when [∥] (Reset) is pressed to revert to the default settings. You can change the following default settings based on your needs.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <Copy Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 Preferences
 Timer Settings
 Common Settings
 Copy Settings
```

3 Select <Change Defaults> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Copy Settings
 Change Defaults
```

4 Select the item using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Change Defaults
 <Apply>
 No. of Copies: 1
 Density: ±0
 Original Type: Text…
```

For more information, see "Copy Settings" (→P.3-7).

5 Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] after you have specified the setting and press [OK].

```
Change Defaults
 <Apply>
 No. of Copies: 1
 Density: ±0
 Original Type: Text…
```

6 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Viewing Copy Settings

You can confirm the settings of copy function which have been changed from the default setting.

Keys to be used for this operation

Back   View Settings

1 Press [◯] (View Settings).

The current settings in the machine are displayed.

* If you have not changed the default settings, the message <No settings have been changed.> is displayed.

```
View Settings
 Density: +1
 Original Type: Text/…
 Sharpness: +1
```

2 Check your settings.

NOTE -

You can change those settings

Select items and press [OK] to display a setting screen for those items, where you can change those settings.

- -

3 Press [◯] (Back) to return to the standby display.

Copying

Printing from a Computer

This category describes how to print from computers.

* If you are a Macintosh user, see the following.

- To view how to install the Printer Driver
  → Starter Guide or Mac UFRII Printer Driver Installation Guide

- To view how to use each function
  → Printer Driver's Help

To view how to display Mac UFRII Printer Driver Installation Guide or Help in the Printer Driver, see "For Macintosh Users" (→P.11-5).

Preparing to Print from Your Computer

To print your documents files from your computer, perform the following steps.

Step 1	Choose between USB and network connections.	☞ Starter Guide → 4 Connecting to a Computer and Installing the Drivers
Step 2	Install the printer driver.	

> **NOTE**
>
> **To change the port number of the machine**
> See the following section.
> ☞ e-Manual → Security → Restricting network connections → Setting Protocol Port Numbers
> Change printer settings on your computer when changing the port number of the machine.
> ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Setting Up Your Computer to Print and Send Faxes (Windows Only) → Configuring Printer Settings on Your Computer
>
> **About the printer driver**
> The printer driver is software required for printing from an application. The printer driver will convert application software's print data to print data for the printer.
> The printer driver for this machine has the following features.
> - The printer driver for this machine enables you to output print data at an optimum speed by dividing the workload using a computer and the printer.
> - As well as providing faster and more stable printing than conventional models, the printer driver for this machine uses less memory to operate.
> - In addition to the conversion of print data, the printer driver for this machine is equipped with the functions capable of spooling print data and configuring the print condition, and various types of print finishing can be set such as scaling or gutter adjustment.

Printing from a Computer

Scaling Documents

You can enlarge or reduce documents to match the output paper size.

There are two methods for scaling a document: select the output size of the document to scale it automatically, or specify the scaling value manually.

1 Click [Page Setup].

2 Select paper size of the document you created in the application from [Page Size].

3 Select output size of the document from [Output Size].

The document is scaled automatically according to the settings made in [Page Size] and [Output Size].

4 If you want to increase or decrease the magnification manually, select [Manual Scaling] → specify the scaling ratio for [Scaling].

5 Click [OK].

NOTE -

- Depending on the selected page size and printer model you are using, you may not be able to magnify the document.
- Depending on the printer model you are using, you may not be able to magnify the document to the optimum ratio for the selected page size.
- The display may differ according to the operating system, as well as the type and version of the printer driver.

Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

Multiple pages can be printed on one sheet of paper.

You can reduce and print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. You can place 2, 4, 6, 8, 9, and 16 pages of documents on a single sheet of paper. Using this feature, you can make materials that are easy to view. Also, this feature helps you to save paper, and save space when storing.

1 Click [Page Setup].

2 Select [N on 1] from [Page Layout] (where "N" is the number of pages you want to print on the sheet).

NOTE

If you cannot select the options for [Page Layout], display the [Device Settings] sheet, and then select [Auto] or [Enabled] from [Spooling at Host]. For instructions on how to display the [Device Settings] sheet, see "Setting the Printer Options" in the e-Manual.

3 Select the page order from [Page Order].

The output image is displayed in the preview area.

4 Click [OK].

NOTE

- You cannot enlarge and reduce manually when using this function.
- Although there may be a function for printing multiple copies depending on the application you are using, do not use it together with this function. If you do, printing may not be executed correctly.
- The display may differ according to the operating system, as well as the type and version of the printer driver.

1-sided Printing and 2-sided Printing (MF8380Cdw Only)

You can select whether to print on one side or both sides of each sheet of paper. The default setting is 2-sided printing.

IMPORTANT

Precautions on 2-sided printing

Do not touch your document when making 2-sided copying until the process is complete. After copying on the front side is complete, the document is partially output, reserved, and fed into the machine again for copying on the back side.

Printing to the back side of printed document (Manual 2-sided printing)

Manual 2-sided printing is available even for a document which is not available for 2-sided printing by using a multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) for the back side* of the printed document. When you want to print the back side of the printed document, stretch ends of the document and then set the document to the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) one by one.

* This feature is available only for sheets which were printed with this product. You cannot print on the same side of the document which was printed.

* If you are using A5 paper, the reverse side may not be printed correctly.

1 Click [Finishing].

NOTE

For instructions on how to display the printer driver screen, see "Printing" or "Configuring the Default Print Settings" in the e-Manual.

2 Select [1-sided Printing] or [2-sided Printing] from [Print Style].

3 Select the binding edge from [Binding Location].

The output image is displayed in the preview area.

4 Click [OK].

🍾 **NOTE** -
The display may differ according to the operating system, as well as the type and version of the printer driver.

- -

Checking and Canceling Print Jobs

You can check detailed information about print jobs or cancel print jobs in the middle of currently printing or waiting.

🍾 **NOTE** -
If the Processing/Data Indicator on the operation panel is:

Turned on/blinking	A job is being processed.
Turned off	No jobs are in the memory.

- -

Keys to be used for this operation

Status Monitor/Cancel

▲▼◀▶OK

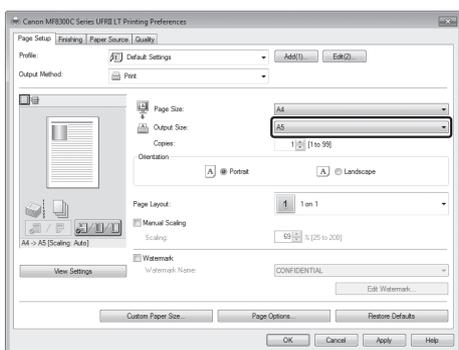**1** Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel).

2 Select <Copy/Print Job> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Device Status
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
```

3 Select <Job Status> using [▲] or [▼], and the press [OK].

```
Copy/Print Job
 Job Status
 Copy Job History
 Print Job History
```

4 Select a job to be checked or canceled using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Copy/Print Job Status
 📄 09:42AM Printing
 📄 09:43AM Waiting
```

The detailed information is displayed.

```
Details
 <Cancel>
 Job Number: 0020
 Status: Printing
 Time: 01/01 09:42AM
```

● **For canceling**

(1) Select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Details
 <Cancel>
 Job Number: 0020
 Status: Printing
 Time: 01/01 09:42AM
```

(2) Select <Yes> using [◄] or [►] and press [OK].
The print job is canceled.

```
Cancel?



  Yes        No
```

(3) Press [☐] (Status Monitor/Cancel) to close the screen.

NOTE -

Pressing [⊘] (Stop) can also delete the print jobs

You can delete the print job also by pressing [⊘] (Stop).

* Press [⊘] (Stop) twice to cancel the job when the machine holds one job only.

For checking only

Press [☐] (Status Monitor/Cancel) to close the screen.

- -

Chapter | **5**

Registering Destinations in the Address Book

This section describes the procedures for registering destinations in the address book and changing or deleting the registered settings.

● Registering Destinations in the Address Book

Specify a destination by manually entering characters/ numbers using the numeric keys or selecting from the address book to fax or send a document.
You can register frequently used destinations in the Favorites list and coded dial codes.
You can also save destinations in the Favorites list and coded dial codes as a group.
You can register destinations from the operation panel or Remote UI.

Favorites

You can register up to 19 destinations in the Favorites list. The destinations registered in the Favorites list are displayed in the Favorites list by selecting the <Fav.> tab in the address book display and can be found easily when you specify the destination.
▶ "Registering and Editing Destinations in the Favorites List"
　(→P.5-3)

Coded dial

You can register up to 181 destinations in coded dial codes. Once the destinations have been registered, you can press the appropriate coded dial code to select the destination.
▶ "Registering and Editing Coded Dial Codes" (→P.5-6)

Group dialing

You can specify up to 199 registered destinations as a group address in the Favorites list and coded dial codes. Group addresses need to be registered in unused Favorites or coded dial codes. All you need to do is to select a Favorites entry or code to specify group addresses.
▶ "Registering and Editing Destinations for Group Dialing"
　(→P.5-9)

📝 **NOTE** -

Saving/Reading the address book

The address book can be saved as a file to your computer using the Remote UI. The machine can read the file saved to your computer.
　☞　e-Manual → Setting and Managing from Computer →
　　　Import/Export the Settings
You cannot edit the address book saved as a file.

Viewing destinations registered in the address book

You can view destinations by printing destination lists.
　☞　e-Manual → Basic Operation → Printing the List → Printing
　　　the Address Book List

- -

Registering and Editing Destinations in the Favorites List

You can perform the following tasks.
- Registering destinations in the Favorites list
- Editing destinations in the Favorites list
- Deleting destinations in the Favorites list

Registering and Editing from the Operation Panel

Keys to be used for this operation

Address Book FAX SCAN Tone, Numeric keys

Back ▲▼◄ OK

1 Press [FAX] or [SCAN].

2 Press [▭] (Address Book).

● **To register a new destination in the Favorites list**
(1) When destinations are already registered in the address book, press [◄].
 To register a destination for the first time, proceed to Step (2).
(2) Select <Register New Destination to Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destina
 Edit Address Book
 Address Book Details
 ◄   ☑   All   Fav.  ►
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

 *******

  (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select <Favorites> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register Location
 Coded Dial
 Favorites
```

(4) Select the destination type to register using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
 * Available destination types vary depending on the model.

```
Destination Type
 Fax
 E-Mail
 Group
```

(5) Select <Name> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
 <Apply>
 Type: Fax
 Name:
 Destination:
```

(6) Use the numeric keys to specify <Name>.
 ▣ "Entering Text" (→P.1-11)

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
 CANON█
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

(7) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
 CANON█
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

(8) Select <Destination> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
 <Apply>
 Type: Fax
 Name: CANON
 Destination:
```

(9) Use the numeric keys to specify <Destination>.
 If you select <Fax> in Step 4, press [OK] to specify <Set Details> if necessary.

```
Destination (Max 40)
 0123456789█
 <Apply>
 Set Details
```

(10) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination (Max 40)
 0123456789█
 <Apply>
 Set Details
```

(11) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
 <Apply>
 Type: Fax
 Name: CANON
 Destination: 012345…
```

● **To edit a destination registered as Farorites**
(1) Press [◀].

```
Register New Destin…
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

(2) Select <Edit Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destin…
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

 *******
 (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Press [▶] to select <Fav.> to display the destinations registered in the Favorites list.

```
 ⬚★ CANON 0123456789


 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

(4) Select the destination that you want to edit using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 ⬚★ CANON 0123456789


 ◀  All  Fav.  A–Z  ▶
```

(5) Select the item that you want to edit using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
   • Type
   • Name
   • Destination

```
Fax
 <Apply>
 Type: Fax
 Name: CANON
 Destination: 0123456
```

(6) When the edit is complete, select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

(7) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
 <Apply>
 Type: Fax
 Name: CANON
 Destination: 012345…
```

● **To delete a destination registered as Farorites**
(1) Press [◀].

```
Register New Destin…
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

(2) Select <Delete From Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
Delete From Address
 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

 *******
 (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Press [▶] to select <Fav.> to display the destinations registered in the Favorites list.

```
 ⬚★ CANON 0123456789


 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

(4) Select the destination that you want to delete using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 ⬚★ CANON 0123456789


 ◀  All  Fav.  A–Z  ▶
```

(5) Select <Yes> using [◀] and press [OK].

```
Delete from
Address Book?

 Yes      No
```

3 Press [◯] (Back) to close the menu screen.

Registering Destinations in the Address Book

Registering and Editing a destination in the Favorites list Using the Remote UI

1 **Start the Web browser.**

2 **Enter "http://<the IP address of the machine>/" in the address field and press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

Input Example: "http://192.168.0.215/"

3 **Log on to the Remote UI.**

(1) Select [Management Mode].
(2) Enter [System Manager ID] and [System Manager PIN].
(3) Click [Log In].

4 **Click [Address Book].**

5 **Click [Favorites].**

To register a new destination in the Favorites list
Proceed to Step 6.

To edit destination registered in the Favorites list
(1) Click [No.], [Type] or [Name].
(2) Click [Edit].
(3) Specify the required settings in the edit screen and click [OK].

To delete destination registered in the Favorites list
(1) Click [Delete] of the destination which you want to delete.

6 **Click the unregistered [No.], [Type] or [Name].**

7 **Select [Destination Type to Register] and click [OK].**

8 **Specify the required settings and click [OK].**

Registering and Editing Coded Dial Codes

You can perform the following tasks.
- Registering coded dial codes
- Editing coded dial codes
- Deleting coded dial codes

Registering and Editing from the Operation Panel

Keys to be used for this operation

Address Book   FAX   SCAN   Tone, Numeric keys

Back   ▲▼◄ OK

1 Press [FAX] or [SCAN].

2 Press [📖] (Address Book).

● **To register a new coded dial code**
(1) When destinations are already registered in the coded dial code, press [◄].
   To register a destination for the first time, proceed to Step (2).
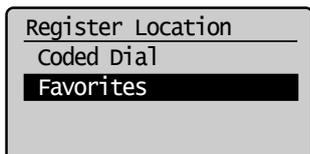(2) Select <Register New Destination to Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destina
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
◄  ☑  All  Fav. ►
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

  ******

  (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select <Coded Dial> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register Location
Coded Dial
Favorites
```
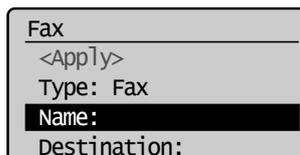
(4) Select the destination type to register using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
   * Available destination types vary depending on the model.

```
Destination Type
Fax
E-Mail
Group
```
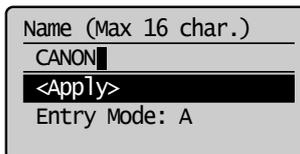
(5) Select <Name> using [ ] or [ ] and press [OK].

```
Fax
<Apply>
Type: Fax
Name:
Destination:
```

(6) Use the numeric keys to specify <Name>.
   ▶ "Entering Text" (→P.1-11)

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
CANON▉
<Apply>
Entry Mode: A
```

(7) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
CANON▉
<Apply>
Entry Mode: A
```

(8) Select <Destination> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
<Apply>
Type: Fax
Name: CANON
Destination:
```

(9) Use the numeric keys to specify <Destination>.
   If you select <Fax> in Step 4, press [OK] to specify <Set Details> if necessary.

```
Destination (Max 40)
0123456789▉
<Apply>
Set Details
```

(10) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination (Max 40)
0123456789▉
<Apply>
Set Details
```

(11) Select <Coded Dial> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
  Type: Fax
  Name: CANON
  Destination: 012345…
  Coded Dial: 001
```

(12) Select the number to be registered using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Enter Registration No.
  001 Not Registered
  002 Not Registered
  003 Not Registered
  004 Not Registered
```

(13) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
  <Apply>
  Type: Fax
  Name: CANON
  Destination: 012345…
```

● **To edit a coded dial code**
(1) Press [◀].

```
Register New Destin…
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
  ◀   ☑   All   Fav.   ▶
```

(2) Select <Edit Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destin…
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
  ◀   ☑   All   Fav.   ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

  *******

  (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select the destination that you want to edit using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 🗐  CANON 0123456789



  ◀   All   Fav.   A-Z   ▶
```

(4) Select the item that you want to edit using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
  • Type
  • Name
  • Destination
  • Coded Dial

```
Fax
  Type: Fax
  Name: CANON02
  Destination: 987654…
  Coded Dial: 002
```

(5) When the edit is complete, select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

(6) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
  <Apply>
  Type: Fax
  Name: CANON02
  Destination: 987654…
```
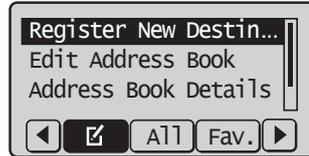
● **To delete a coded dial code**
(1) Press [◀].

```
Register New Destin…
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
  ◀   ☑   All   Fav.   ▶
```

(2) Select <Delete From Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
Delete From Address
  ◀   ☑   All   Fav.   ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

  *******

  (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select the destination that you want to delete using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 🗐  CANON 0123456789



  ◀   All   Fav.   A-Z   ▶
```

(4) Select <Yes> using [◀] and press [OK].

```
Delete from
Address Book?


   Yes        No
```

3 Press [◯](Back) to close the menu screen.

Registering and Editing a Coded Dial Code Using the Remote UI

1 Start the Web browser.

2 Enter "http://<the IP address of the machine>/" in the address field and press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

Input Example: "http://192.168.0.215/"

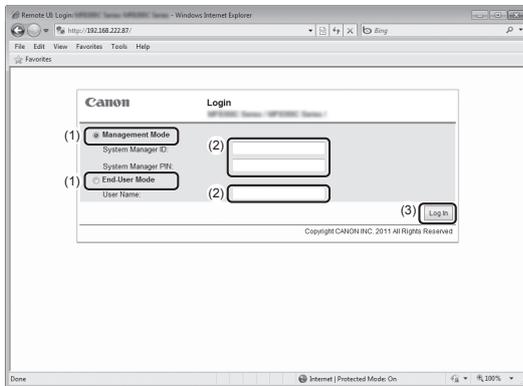**3 Log on to the Remote UI.**

(1) Select [Management Mode].
(2) Enter [System Manager ID] and [System Manager PIN].
(3) Click [Log In].

4 Click [Address Book].

5 Click [Coded Dial].

To register a coded dial newly
Proceed to Step 6.

To edit the registered coded dial
(1) Click [No.], [Type] or [Name].
(2) Click [Edit].
(3) Specify the required settings in the edit screen and click [OK].

To delete the registered coded dial
(1) Click [Delete] of the destination which you want to delete.

6 Click the unregistered [No.], [Type] or [Name].

7 Select [destination type to register] and click [OK].

8 Specify the required settings and click [OK].

Registering Destinations in the Address Book

Registering and Editing Destinations for Group Dialing

You can perform the following tasks.
- Registering group addresses
- Adding destination(s) to a group
- Deleting destination(s) from a group
- Changing the group name
- Deleting group(s)

⚠ IMPORTANT

Before registering group addresses
- Group addresses are registered in the Favorites list or the coded dial codes in the address book. Make sure that the Favorites list or the coded dial codes are not full so that the group addresses can be added.
- Destinations must be registered in the Favorites list or coded dial codes before they are added to a group.
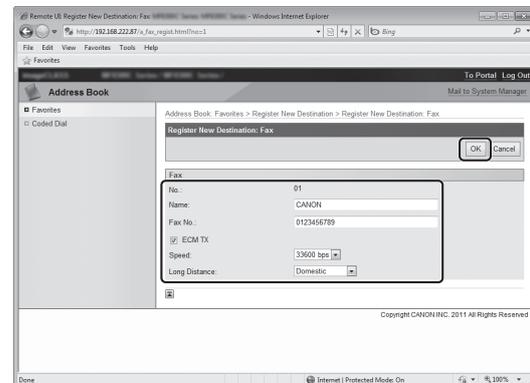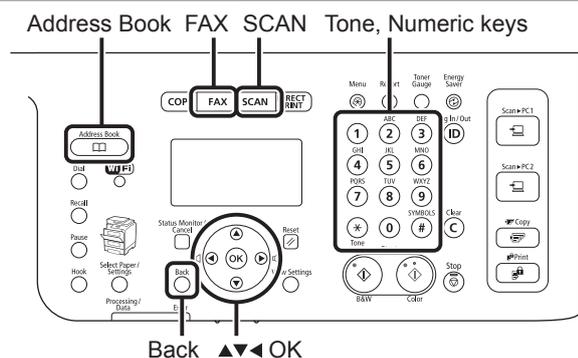
Registering and Editing a Destination Group from the Operation Panel

Keys to be used for this operation

Address Book FAX SCAN Tone, Numeric keys

Back ▲▼◄ OK

1 Press [FAX] or [SCAN].

2 Press [📖] (Address Book).

```
📇★ CANON01 012345678
📇★ CANON02 98765432...
📇   CANON03 00112233...
 ◄   ☑   All  Fav.  ►
```

● **To register new group addresses**

(1) Press [◄].

(2) Select <Register New Destination to Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destina
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
     ☑   All  Fav.  ►
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

*******
  (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select <Favorites> or <Coded Dial> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register Location
Coded Dial
Favorites
```

(4) Select <Group> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination Type
Fax
E-Mail
Group
```

(5) If you selected <Coded Dial> in Step (3), select the number to be registered using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Enter Registration No.
001 📇 CANON01 012...
002 📇 CANON02 987...
003 Not Registered
004 Not Registered
```

(6) Select <Name> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
<Apply>
Type: Group
Name:
Destinations: 0
```

(7) Use the numeric keys to specify <Name>.
▷ "Entering Text" (→P.1-11)

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
CANON█
<Apply>
Entry Mode: A
```

(8) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
CANON█
<Apply>
Entry Mode: A
```

(9) Select <Destinations: > using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
<Apply>
Type: Group
Name: CANON
Destinations: 0
```

(10) Select <Add> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination(s)
 <Apply>
 <Add>

```

(11) Select the destination that you want to add using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 ▣★ CANON01 012345678
 ▣★ CANON02 98765432...
 ▣   CANON03 00112233...
 ◀  All  Fav.  A-Z  ▶
```

(12) Repeat Steps (10) and (11) to select the destinations to be added.

(13) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination(s)
 <Apply>
 <Add>
 ▣ CANON01 0123456789
 ▣ CANON02 9876543210
```

(14) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
 <Apply>
 Type: Group
 Name: CANON
 Destinations: 2
```

● **To add destination(s) to a group**

(1) Press [◀].

(2) Select <Edit Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destin...
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

 *******

 (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select the group to be edited using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 ☷★ CANON 2 Destinat
 ▣★ CANON01 0123456...
 ▣★ CANON02 9876543...
 ◀  All  Fav.  A-Z  ▶
```

(4) Select <Destinations: > using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
 <Apply>
 Type: Group
 Name: CANON
 Destinations: 2
```

(5) Select <Add> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination(s)
 <Apply>
 <Add>
 ▣ CANON01 0123456789
 ▣ CANON02 9876543210
```

(6) Select the destination to be added using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 ▣★ CANON01 01234567...
 ▣★ CANON02 98765432...
 ▣   CANON03 001122334
 ◀  All  Fav.  A-Z  ▶
```

(7) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination(s)
 <Apply>
 <Add>
 ▣ CANON01 01234567...
 ▣ CANON02 98765432...
```

(8) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
 <Apply>
 Type: Group
 Name: CANON
 Destinations: 3
```

● **To delete destination(s) from a group**

(1) Press [◀].

(2) Select <Edit Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destin...
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
 ◀  ☑  All  Fav.  ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

 *******

 (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select the group to be edited using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
 ☷★ CANON 3 Destinat
 ▣★ CANON01 0123456...
 ▣★ CANON02 9876543...
 ◀  All  Fav.  A-Z  ▶
```

(4) Select <Destinations: > using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
 <Apply>
 Type: Group
 Name: CANON
 Destinations: 3
```

(5) Select the destination to be deleted using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination(s)
 <Add>
 🖃 CANON01 01234567…
 🖃 CANON02 98765432…
 🖃 CANON03 001122334
```

(6) Select <Delete From Group> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax
 <Delete From Group>
 Name: CANON03
 Destination: 0011223…
 Coded Dial: 001
```

(7) Select <Yes> using [◀] and press [OK].

```
Delete from group?



  Yes       No
```

(8) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Destination(s)
 <Apply>
 <Add>
 🖃 CANON01 0123456789
 🖃 CANON02 9876543210
```

(9) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼]and press [OK].

```
Group
 <Apply>
 Type: Group
 Name: CANON
 Destinations: 2
```

● **To change the name of a group**
(1) Press [◀].
(2) Select <Edit Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Register New Destin…
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
◀   ☑   All   Fav.  ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

 *******

  (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select the group of which name will be changed using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
👥★ CANON 2 Destinat
🖃★ CANON01 0123456…
🖃★ CANON02 9876543…
◀   All   Fav.   A-Z  ▶
```

(4) Select <Name> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
 <Apply>
 Type: Group
 Name: CANON
 Destinations: 2
```

(5) Change <Name>.
▶ "Entering Text" (→P.1-11)

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
 CANON A▊
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

(6) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Name (Max 16 char.)
 CANON A▊
 <Apply>
 Entry Mode: A
```

(7) Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Group
 <Apply>
 Type: Group
 Name: CANON A
 Destinations: 2
```

● **To delete group(s)**
(1) Press [◀].
(2) Select <Delete From Address Book> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Edit Address Book
Address Book Details
Delete From Address
◀   ☑   All   Fav.  ▶
```

When the address book PIN is set
Use the numeric keys to enter the PIN and press [OK].

```
Address Book PIN

 *******

  (Apply: Press OK)
```

(3) Select the group that you want to delete using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
👥★ CANON 3 Destinat
🖃★ CANON01 0123456…
🖃★ CANON02 9876543…
◀   All   Fav.   A-Z  ▶
```

(4) Select <Yes> using [◀] and press [OK].
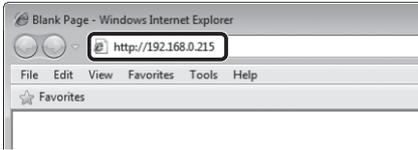
```
Delete from
Address Book?

  Yes        No
```

3 Press [◯] (Back) to close the menu screen.

Registering and Editing a Destination Group Using the Remote UI
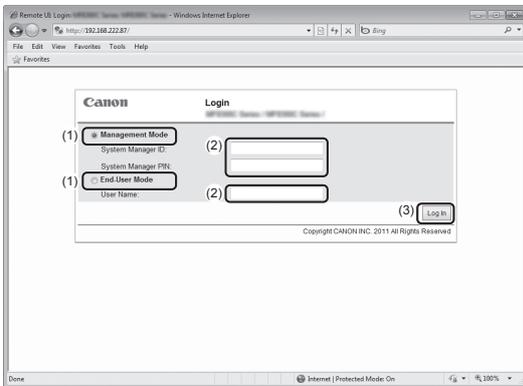
1 Start the Web browser.

2 Enter "http://<the IP address of the machine>/" in the address field and press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.
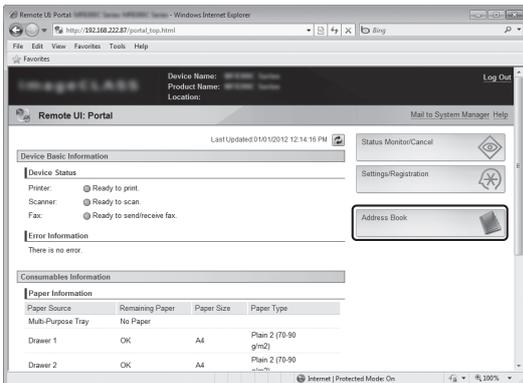
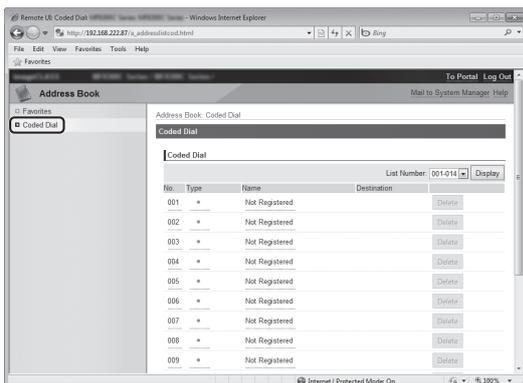Input Example: "http://192.168.0.215/"

3 Log on to the Remote UI.

(1) Select [Management Mode].
(2) Enter [System Manager ID] and [System Manager PIN].
(3) Click [Log In].

4 Click [Address Book].

5 Click [Favorites] or [Coded Dial].

● **To register a group dial newly**
Proceed to Step 4.

● **To add destination(s) to the registered group dial**
(1) Click [No.], [Type] or [Name].
(2) Click [Edit].
(3) Click [Select from Address Book].
(4) Click [Favorites] or [Coded Dial] from the drop-down list and click [Display].
(5) Select the check box of the destination which you want to add to the group and click [OK].
(6) Make sure the destination you registered is displayed in [Members List] and click [OK].

● **To delete destination(s) from the registered group dial**
(1) Click [No.], [Type] or [Name].
(2) Click [Edit].
(3) Select the destination to be deleted from [Members List] and click [Delete].
(4) Click [OK].

● **To change the name of the registered group dial**
(1) Click [No.], [Type] or [Name].
(2) Click [Edit].
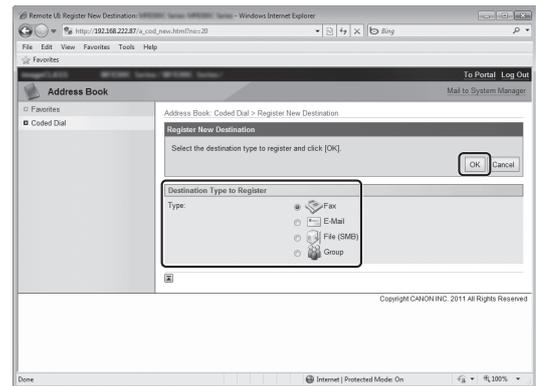(3) Change the name of [Group Name] and click [OK].

● **To delete the registered group dial**
(1) Click [Delete] of the group dial which you want to delete.

6 **Click the unregistered [No.], [Type] or [Name].**

7 **Select [Group] in [Destination Type to Register] and click [OK].**

8 **Enter the group name in [Group Name] and click [Select from Address Book].**

9 **Select the destination(s) to be registered in this group.**

(1) Select [Favorites] or [Coded Dial] from the drop-down list and click [Display].
(2) Select the check box of the destination which you want to register in the group.
(3) Click [OK].

10 **Make sure that the destination you registered is displayed in [Members List] and click [OK].**

Chapter | 6

Using the Fax Functions

This chapter describes how to use the fax functions.

Basic Procedures for Sending Faxes

This section describes the basic procedure for sending a fax.

1 **Place your documents.**

▷ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)

▷ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 **Press [FAX].**

4 **Specify the destination.**

These are the following methods to specify a destination.
(For details, see P.6-5 to P.6-6.)

1 Entering the fax number

2 Address book

3 Coded dial codes

4 Group dialing

5 Sequential broadcast
(→P.6-11)

3 **Specify the scanning settings as needed.**

There are the four items you can specify.
(For details, see P.6-3 to P.6-4.)

1 Resolution Settings

2 Density Settings

3 2-Sided Original (MF8380Cdw Only)

4 Sharpness Settings

The settings specified here are effective only for the current sending operation. To make the settings effective for all the fax operations, see "Changing the Default Fax Settings" (→P.6-22).

5 **Press [⬦] (B & W).**

When your fax is placed in the feeder

The scan starts. Your fax is sent to the destination when the scan is complete.

When your fax is placed on the platen glass

Perform the following procedure.

(1) Select the size of the original document using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Scan Size
 LTR
 STMT
```

(2) Place the next page on the platen glass and press [⬦] (B & W). Press [⬦] (B & W) for each page.

(3) When all documents are scanned completely, select <Start Sending> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
Your fax is sent to your fax destination.

Changing the Scan Settings (Fax)

1 Resolution Settings

Fax mode screen

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
🖶=▮
RX Mode: Auto
Resolution: 200 x 10
```

Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Resolution>.

(OK) →

Setting screen

```
Resolution
200 x 100 dpi (Norma
200 x 200 dpi (Fine)
200 x 200 dpi (Phot...
200 x 400 dpi (Supe...
```

Specify the resolution.

Higher resolutions result in better image quality but require longer transmission times.

<200 x 100 dpi (Normal)>	For faxes that contain text
<200 x 200 dpi (Fine)>	For faxes that contain fine text
<200 x 200 dpi (Photo)>	For faxes that contain photographs
<200 x 400 dpi (Superfine)>	Achieves an even finer resolution than (Fine).
<400 x 400 dpi (Ultrafine)>	Achieves an even finer resolution than (Superfine).

2 Density Settings

Fax mode screen

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
🖶=▮
Resolution: 200 x 1...
Density: ±0
```

Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Density>.

(OK) →

Setting screen

```
Density

- □□□□▮□□□□ +
```

Specify the density.

[◀]	Decrease the density.
[▶]	Increase the density.

3 2-Sided Original Settings (MF8380Cdw only)

NOTE -

The <2-Sided Original> mode is not available when
- scanning original using the platen glass
- scanning with the manual sending mode

- -

Fax mode screen

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
🖶=▮
Resolution: 200 x 1...
2-Sided Original: O...
```

Press [▲] or [▼] to select <2-Sided Original>.

(OK) →

Setting screen

```
2-Sided Original
Off
Book Type
Calendar Type
```

Specify the settings for scanning 2-sided documents.

<Off>	The setting for scanning 2-sided documents is not set.
<Book Type>	Select when the orientation (top-to-bottom) of the images on the front and back sides is the same.
<Calendar Type>	Select when the orientation (top-to-bottom) of the images on the front and back sides is different.

▶▶**To next page**

Changing the Scan Settings (Fax)

4 Sharpness Settings

Fax mode screen

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
 📠=▊
 2-Sided Original: O...
 Sharpness: ±0
```

Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Sharpness>.

⊛

Setting screen

```
Sharpness
──────────────
 - ☐☐☐▮☐☐☐ +
```

Adjust this setting to emphasize the outline of the image or decrease the contrast.

[◀]	To clearly capture halftone photos, adjust this setting to the appropriate level on the <-> scale. This can counteract the effect of moiré patterns (uneven gradation and striped patterns).
[▶]	To clearly capture text or lines, adjust this setting to the appropriate level on the <+> scale. It is best suited for scanning blueprints and very weak pencil manuscripts.

Using the Fax Functions

6-4

Specifying Destinations

Specifying Destinations

1 Specifying destinations by entering the fax number

Specify the fax number using the numeric keys, [✳] (Tone), and [#] (SYMBOLS).

To modify destinations

- To cancel the entered destination
  Press and hold [C] (Clear).
- To delete the last character of the entered destination
  Press [C] (Clear).

2 Specifying destinations using the address book

To select a destination from the address book, you need to register destinations in the address book in advance.
▶ "Registering Destinations in the Address Book" (→P.5-2)

1 Press [📖] (Address Book).

2 Press [◀] or [▶] to search for your destination.

- * Select < 📠 > to display fax destinations.
- Select <Fav.> to display destinations registered in the Favorites list.
- Select <All> to display all destinations.
- Select < 📝 > at the bottom of the screen to add or edit destinations.
  ▶ "Registering Destinations in the Address Book" (→P.5-2)

3 Select the destination using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

3 Specifying destinations using coded dial codes

Press [◯] (Coded Dial), and then enter the three-digit registration number (001 to 181) with the numeric keys.
To select a destination from the coded dial codes, you need to register destinations in these codes in advance.
▶ "Registering and Editing Coded Dial Codes" (→P.5-6)

To clear the entered destination

(1) Press [C] (Clear).
  * If multiple destinations have been specified, select the destination that you want to clear using [◀] or [▶], and press [C] (Clear) .
(2) Select <Yes> using [◀] and press [OK].
  * To clear all the scan settings specified, press [✏] (Reset).

Specifying Destinations

4 Specifying destinations using group addresses

When group addresses are registered in the address book
To select a group address from the address book, you need to register group addresses in the address book in advance.
▶ "Registering and Editing Destinations for Group Dialing" (→P.5-9)

1 Press [📖] (Address Book).

2 Press [◄] or [►] to search for your destination.

- Select <👥> to display group destinations.
- Select <All> to display all destinations.
- Select < 📝 > to add or edit destinations.
  ▶ "Registering Destinations in the Address Book" (→P.5-2)

```
📇★ CANON01 01234567
👥   GroupB 2 Destin...
📇   CANON03 0011223...
[◄] [📝] [All] [Fav.] [►]
```

3 Select the destination using [▲] or [▼]] and press [OK].

```
📇★ CANON01 0123456...
👥   GroupB 2 Destin...
📇   CANON03 00112233
[◄] [📝] [All] [Fav.] [►]
```

When group addresses are registered in coded dial codes
Press [⬤] (Coded Dial), and then enter the three-digit registration number (001 to 181) with the numeric keys.

To select a destination from the coded dial codes, you need to register group addresses in these codes in advance.
▶ "Registering and Editing Destinations for Group Dialing" (→P.5-9)

To clear the entered destination

(1) Press [C] (Clear).
  * If multiple destinations have been specified, select the destination that you want to clear using [◄] or [►], and press [C] (Clear).
(2) Select <Yes> using [◄] and press [OK].
  * To clear all the scan settings specified, press [📄] (Reset).

Using the Fax Functions

Canceling Fax Jobs

Cancel sending the job currently being sent.

▲▼OK   Stop

> **NOTE**
>
> **How to cancel fax sending**
> You can also cancel the job with the following procedures.
> - Cancel the job in the Status Monitor/Cancel screen.
> ▶ "Checking and Canceling Fax Jobs" (→P.6-19)
> - Press [◎] (Stop) twice.

---

1 When <Scanning...> is displayed after the fax sending starts, select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Scanning...
 <Start Sending>
 <Cancel>
 Destinations: 1
 No. of TX Pages: 1
```

* You can also cancel the job by pressing [◎] (Stop).

When a document is loaded on the platen glass
When <Scan Next: Press Start> is displayed, follow the same steps as the above.

```
Scan Next: Press Start
 <Start Sending>
 <Cancel>
 Destinations: 1
 No. of TX Pages: 1
```

2 Select <Yes> using [▲] or [▼] when <Cancel?> appears on the screen and press [OK].

* You can also cancel the job by pressing [◎] (Stop).

The job is canceled.

```
Cancel?
 <No>
 <Yes>
 Details
```

Using the Fax Functions

Redialing (Manual Redialing)

You can call and redial up to three fax sending history.

Keys to be used for this operation

Recall   FAX

▲▼OK   Start

1 Place your document.

▶ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 Press [FAX].

3 Press [◯] (Recall).

4 Select history for redial using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

In the history, recipient name and/or telephone number are displayed. For sequential broadcast, only one content is displayed.

```
Recall
  🗂  012XXXXXX
```

5 Press [◇] (B & W).

📝 **NOTE** -

Contents saved in the fax sending history

The sequential broadcast destinations are included. The following reading settings are saved as well. You can change them for redialing.

- Resolution
- Density
- 2-Sided Original (MF8380Cdw only)
- Sharpness

Redial restrictions

- Manual fax sending is not saved in the history and cannot be redialed.

▶ "Notifying the Recipient of an Incoming Fax by Telephone (Manual Sending)" (→P.6-9)

- When fax sending from the history is restricted, redialing feature is not available.

▶ "Restrict History TX" (→P.6-29)

- When <Restrict New Dest.> is set to <On>, the saved fax sending history up to then is deleted for preventing those new destinations in the history from being redialed.

▶ "Restrict New Destinations" (→P.6-29)

When the machine is turned OFF

Recently dialed numbers are all cleared.

To automatically redial a number

▶ "Auto Redial" (→P.6-24)

Useful Features

Notifying the Recipient of an Incoming Fax by Telephone (Manual Sending)

Send a fax manually when

- you want to notify the recipient of an incoming fax by telephone.
- the receiving fax machine cannot receive faxes automatically.

Keys to be used for this operation

1 Connect an external telephone to the machine.

For more information, see the following.
☞ e-Manual → Setting Up the Machine → Specifying Initial Settings for the Fax Functions and Connecting the Telephone Cable → Connecting the Telephone Line

2 Place faxes in the feeder.

▶ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

3 Press [FAX].

4 Specify the scan settings.

The <2-Sided Original> mode (MF8380Cdw only) is not available.
▶ "Changing the Scan Settings (Fax)" (→P.6-3)

5 Check for a dial tone via the handset of the external telephone.

Check if you hear the dial tone.

6 Dial the recipient's number.

7 Talk to the recipient through the handset.

When you hear a beep
Proceed to Step 9.

8 Ask the recipient to set his/her fax machine to receive your fax.

9 When you hear a beep, press [⬦] (B & W), and hang up the handset.

When the scan is complete, the machine is ready to send your faxes.

NOTE -

Restrictions when sending faxes manually
- When placing documents on the platen glass, only one page can be sent.
- The group dialing function is not available.
- The <2-Sided Original> mode is not available when you perform manual sending.

Check for a dial tone before entering the number.
When the number is entered before checking for a dial tone, your call cannot come through or may be connected to a wrong destination.

- -

Push-button Telephone for Tone Dialing

Some types of push-button telephones require a push-button line (for example, banks, airlines, or hotel reservations). When the machine is connected to a dial-up line, you can receive a fax using tone dialing. Follow the steps in the procedure below.

Keys to be used for this operation

1 Press [FAX].

2 Press [◯] (Hook) and check for the dial tone.

Check if you hear the dial tone.

3 Dial the information service from which you want to receive fax(es) using the numeric keys.

```
Specify destination.
     01/01/2011 12:52AM
 📠=012XXXXXX
 Start Receiving
 Resolution: 200 x 1...
```

4 Respond to the prerecorded messages of the information service and press [✳] (Tone).

You can switch to tone dialing.

```
Specify destination.
     01/01/2011 12:52AM
 📠=012XXXXXXT
 Start Receiving
 Resolution: 200 x 1...
```

5 Enter the required numbers using the numeric keys.

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
  ⌂=012XXXXXXT3456
 Start Receiving
 Resolution: 200 x 1...
```

6 Press [🖨] (B & W) to receive fax(es).

▮ NOTE --

To make a telephone call
An external telephone must be connected to the machine.

Check for a dial tone before entering the number.
When the number is entered before checking for a dial tone, your call cannot come through or may be connected to a wrong destination.

Sending a Fax Abroad (Adding Pauses)

When making an overseas call, you may need to add a pause to the fax number.

Since signals are transmitted over long distances across a complicated channel, your call may not be connected without adding a pause after the country code or in front of the fax number. By adding a pause, enough time elapses before the machine starts dialing the number again.

Keys to be used for this operation

Pause   Start

1 Place your document.

▶ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 Press [FAX].

3 Specify the scanning settings as needed.

▶ "Changing the Scan Settings (Fax)" (→P.6-3)

4 Enter the international access code using the numeric keys.

For more information on international access codes, contact your telephone company.

```
Fax Number

  ⌂= 012▮
 <Apply>
```

5 Press [⚪] (Pause) to enter a pause as needed.

- The letter <p> is displayed to indicate that a pause is added.
- The default pause length is two seconds*. To change it, see "Pause Time" (→P.6-24).
- To add more pauses into the dialing sequence, press [⚪] (Pause) again.
- * The default pause length varies depending on the country where you are using the machine.

```
Fax Number

  ⌂= 012P▮
 <Apply>
```

6 Enter the country code, the area code, and the fax/telephone number using the numeric keys.

```
Fax Number

  ⌂= 012p031XXXXXXX▮
 <Apply>
```

7 Press [⚪] (Pause) to add a pause to the end of the fax/telephone number as needed.

- The letter <P> is displayed at the end of the fax number.
- A pause added to the end of the number is set to 10 seconds.

```
Fax Number

  ⌂= 012p031XXXXXXXP▮
 <Apply>
```

8 Press [🖨] (B & W).

Sending to Multiple Destinations at a Time (Sequential Broadcast)

You can send the same fax to multiple destinations simultaneously.

Keys to be used for this operation

Numeric keys

▲▼OK   Start

1 Place your document.

▷ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
▷ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 Specify the destination.

▷ "Specifying Destinations" (→P.6-6)
Specify destinations in the following ways.
- by entering the fax number
- by selecting a coded dial code
- by selecting a group address
- from the address book

3 Select how to specify destinations that you want to add using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

- Address Book
- Coded Dial
- Specify Next Destination (New)
▷ "Specifying Destinations" (→P.6-6)

4 Repeat Step 2 and 3 to enter all the destinations.

5 Press [◈] (B & W).

📝 **NOTE** -

The number of destinations that you can specify for a sequential broadcast
- Using the numeric keys: Up to 10 destinations
- Favorites: Up to 19 destinations
- Coded dial codes: Up to 181 destinations

To specify destinations using the numeric keys
Enter the numbers and press [OK].

For confirming/deleting/editing the specified destinations

(1) Select <Confirm/Edit Destination(s)> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Send: Press Start
      Destinations: 3
◀🖃=0123456789
  Specify Next Destin…
  Confirm/Edit Destina
```

(2) Select the destination using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK]. Details of the destination are displayed.

```
Confirm/Edit Dest.
  🖃 Canon 0987654321
  🖃 User01 9876543210
  🖃 0123456789
```

(3) In order to delete the destination, select <Delete Destination> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

For editing destinations being entered using numeric keys

Edit the destinations using numeric keys and select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

- -

Using the Fax Functions

RX Mode

This section describes how to receive faxes.

RX Mode

The machine allows you to receive faxes automatically or manually in several different ways.
See the following flowcharts to select the receive mode that you want to use.
The default setting is <Auto>.

Auto mode

You can receive faxes automatically.
The receive mode varies depending on whether an external telephone is connected to the machine or not.

Operation for when an incoming call is received

Without an external telephone connected   **With an external telephone connected**

When the call is a fax
The machine receives the fax automatically.

When the call is a voice call
The machine does not respond.

An incoming call rings for the specified number of times. *

When you pick up the handset while the incoming call rings

When you do not pick up the handset while the incoming call rings

When the call is a fax
You can hear a beep.Following the procedure below, receive the fax.
(1) Press [Fax].
(2) Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Start Receiving>, and then press [OK].
(3) Hang up the handset.

When the call is a voice call
You can start talking as is.

When the call is a fax
The machine receives the fax automatically.

When the call is a voice call
You cannot start talking.

*   You can specify the incoming call ring times using "Incoming Ring" (→P.6-26).

Using the Fax Functions

Fax/Tel mode

You can receive faxes automatically (The telephone rings on an incoming call). To disable audible incoming rings, see "Incoming Ring" (→P.6-26).
You can answer incoming calls by picking up the handset.

Operation for when an incoming call is received

An incoming call rings for the specified number of times.[*1]

When you do not pick up the handset within the specified number of times

When you pick up the handset within the specified number of times

When the call is a fax
You can hear a beep.Following the procedure below, receive the fax.
(1) Press [Fax].
(2) Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Start Receiving>, and then press [OK].
(3) Hang up the handset.

When the call is a voice call
You can start talking as is.

The machine judges whether the incoming call is a fax or voice call.[*2]

When the call is a fax
The machine receives the fax automatically.

When the call is a voice call
The telephone rings.[*3]

When you pick up the handset during ringing
You can start talking as is.

When you do not pick up the handset during ringing
The machine hangs up the telephone or switches to the fax receive mode.[*4]

[*1] You can specify the incoming call ring times using "Incoming Ring" (→P.6-26).
[*2] To set a ring delay before the telephone starts ringing on an incoming call, go to the <Ring Start Time> option.
[*3] To adjust the incoming call ring time, go to the <Incoming Ring Time> option.
[*4] To specify how the machine behaves when you do not answer an incoming call, go to the <Action After Ring> option.

For more information on these options, see "Advanced Settings for the Fax/Tel Auto Switch Mode" (→P.6-15).

Answer mode

You can receive faxes automatically.
The telephone's built-in answer function records messages of unanswered calls.

Operation for when an incoming call is received

The telephone rings the number of times specified for the built-in answering machine.[*1]

When you pick up the handset during ringing

When the built-in answering machine starts up

When the call is a fax
You can hear a beep.Following the procedure below, receive the fax.
(1) Press [Fax].
(2) Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Start Receiving>, and then press [OK].
(3) Hang up the handset.

When the call is a voice call
You can start talking as is.

When the call is a fax
The machine receives the fax automatically.

When the call is a voice call
The built-in answering machine records the message.[*2]

[*1] Set the answer function to answer after a few rings.
[*2] The message is recorded on the answer function (You are advised to add approximately 4 seconds of silence at the beginning of the message or set the maximum recording time to 20 seconds).

Manual mode

Pick up the handset to answer calls or receive faxes when the machine is set to manual mode.
Set this mode when you expect to receive more incoming telephone calls than faxes or when you receive few faxes.

Operation for when an incoming call is received

The external phone rings.

When you pick up the handset while the telephone rings

When you do not pick up the handset while the telephone rings
The machine cannot receive a call or fax.[*1]

When the call is a fax
You can hear a beep.Following the procedure below, receive the fax.[*2]
(1) Press [Fax].
(2) Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Start Receiving>, and then press [OK].
(3) Hang up the handset.

When the call is a voice call
You can start talking as is.

[*1] When "Auto RX Switch" (→P.6-26) is set to <On> , the machine automatically starts receiving a fax after several rings.
[*2] When "Remote RX" (→P.6-26) is set, you can dial the telephone to receive faxes remotely.

DRPD (Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection) mode

This mode assigns distinctive ring patterns to up to two phone numbers per telephone line. The machine automatically identifies incoming calls based on the ring pattern and sorts out whether an incoming call is a fax or voice call. Set the fax ring pattern that matches the ring pattern of your telephone company. Contact your telephone company for more information.

Changing the Receive Mode

Select the receive mode that you want to use.

Keys to be used for this operation

FAX

▲▼ OK

1 Press [FAX].

2 Select <RX Mode> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
  📠=■
 RX Mode: Auto
 Resolution: 200 x 1...
```

3 Select the receive mode using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
RX Mode
 Auto
 Fax/Tel Auto Switch
 Manual
 Answering Machine
```

When <Fax/Tel Auto Switch> is selected
Proceed to specify the advanced settings. See "Advanced Settings for the Fax/Tel Auto Switch Mode" (→P.6-15).
When <DRPD: Select Fax> is selected
Press [▲] or [▼] to select the ring pattern and then press [OK].

📝 NOTE -
About the external telephone
The machine may not be able to send or receive faxes properly, depending on the type of telephone connected to it.
- -

Advanced Settings for the Fax/Tel Auto Switch Mode

Set the advanced settings for the Fax/Tel Auto Switch mode.

Keys to be used for this operation

FAX

▲▼ OK

1 Press [FAX].

2 Select <RX Mode> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Specify destination.
    01/01/2011 12:52AM
  📠=■
 RX Mode: Auto
 Resolution: 200 x 1...
```

3 Select <Fax/Tel Auto Switch> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
RX Mode
 Auto
 Fax/Tel Auto Switch
 Manual
 Answering Machine
```

4 Select the option using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax/Tel Auto Switch
 <Apply>
 Ring Start Time:  6
 Incoming Ring Time: ...
 After Ring: RX
```

<Ring Start Time>	Set the duration during which the machine tries to detect fax tones before the telephone starts ringing. Set the duration somewhere between 5 to 30 seconds and press [OK].
<Incoming Ring Time>	Set the duration during which the telephone keeps ringing when an incoming call comes. Set the duration somewhere between 15 to 300 seconds and press [OK].

<Action After Ring>	Specify how the machine behaves when an incoming call is not answered. Select <End> or <RX> and press [OK].
	  - <End>: Disconnect the call.
	  - <RX>: Receive an incoming fax.

5 Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

The changes are saved.

```
Fax/Tel Auto Switch
 <Apply>
 Ring Start Time:  6
 Incoming Ring Time: ...
 After Ring: RX
```

Forwarding Fax Documents

Received fax documents are transferred to a fax, E-mail or a file server.

> **NOTE** -
>
> **Destinations that can be specified**
>
> You can specify the followings as destinations.
> - Fax
> - E-mail (MF8380Cdw only)
> - File server (MF8380Cdw only)
> - Group destination
>
> **For forwarding to E-mail or a file server (MF8380Cdw only)**
>
> When a fax document is transferred to an E-mail or a file server, the document is converted to a PDF file.
>
> **When the destination is deleted from an address book**
>
> When you delete the destination from the address book between the time the fax forward is configured and the time the fax is received, a destination unknown forwarding error occurs.
>
> **To learn how to handle transfer errors**
>
> See the following sections.
> ▶ "Configurating Operations for Transfer Errors" (→P.6-17)
> ▶ "Re-forwarding/Printing/Deleting Documents in Which Transfer Is Failed" (→P.6-18)

Setting Document Transfer (Automatic Forwarding)

Specify whether a document is automatically transferred during receiving and where to be transferred.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <System Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 USB Direct Print Se…
 Printer Settings
 Adjustment/Maintena…
 System Settings
```

3 Select <Forwarding Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
System Settings
 Security Settings
 Communication Manag…
 Select Country/Regi…
 Forwarding Settings
```

4 Select <Off> or <On> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Forwarding Settings
 off
 On
```

<On>	Starts to transfer received documents. Next, you need to configure transfer destinations.
<Off>	Transfer is not performed.

When <On> is selected

You can specify where to forward. You can specify only by the following approaches:
▶ "Specifying destinations using coded dial codes" (→P.6-5)
▶ "Specifying destinations using the address book" (→P.6-5)

```
 🖻★ CANON01 01234567
 🖻★ CANON02 9876543…
 🖻  CANON03 0011223…
 ◀ All  Fav.  A-Z ▶
```

5 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Forwarding Received Faxes Stored in Memory to Other Destinations (Manual Forwarding)

When a fax is stored in memory, you can manually forward it to a specified destination.

Keys to be used for this operation

Status Monitor/Cancel

▲▼ OK

1 Press [▢] (Status Monitor/Cancel).

2 Select <RX Job> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Device Status
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
```

3 Select <Job Status> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
RX Job Status/History
 Job Status
 Job History
```

4 Select the job that you want to forward using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

You cannot forward received faxes when
* the machine is in the middle of receiving another fax.
* the machine starts printing a job after it has received a fax.

```
RX Job Status
 12:52AM Receiving
 12:54AM Waiting: Prin
```

5 Select <Forward> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Details
 <Delete>
 <Forward>
 Job Number: 0004
 Status: Waiting to …
```

6 Specify the forwarding destination.

See the following sections to specify destinations.
▶ "Specifying destinations using coded dial codes" (→P.6-5)
▶ "Specifying destinations using the address book" (→P.6-5)

```
囗 CANON 0123456789
🕴 GroupA 2 Destin…
囗★ User01 01234567…
   [✎]  All  Fav. ▶
```

Configuring Operations for Transfer Errors

When received documents are transferred or when a transfer error occurs, its details can be saved in a memory or printed.

Keys to be used for this operation

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <System Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 USB Direct Print Se…
 Printer Settings
 Adjustment/Maintena…
 System Settings
```

3 Select <Store/Print When Fowarding> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
System Settings
 Communication Manag…
 Select Country/Regi…
 Forwarding Settings
 Store/Print When Fow
```

To print a transferred document
(1) Select <Print Images> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Store/Print Forwarding
 Print Images
 Store Images in Memo…
```

(2) Select settings using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Print Images
 Off
 On
 Only When Error Occu…
```

<Off>	When a document is transferred, that document is not printed.
<On>	When a document is transferred, that document is printed.
<Only When Error Occurs>	Only when a transfer error occurs, that document is printed.

To save a transferred document in a memory

(1) Select <Store Images in Memory> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Store/Print Forwarding
 Print Images
 Store Images in Memor
```

(2) Select settings using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Store Images in Memory
 Do Not Store
 Only When Error Occu...
```

<Do Not Store>	When a document is transferred, that document is not saved.
<Only When Error Occurs>	Only when a transfer error occurs, that document is saved in a memory.

4 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Re-forwarding/Printing/Deleting Documents in Which Transfer Is Failed

NOTE -

When You Use This Feature

Select <Only When Error Occurs> for <Store Images in Memory> in the <Store/Print When Fowarding> setting.

About re-forwarded job

The job which has been reforwarded successfully is deleted.

- -

Keys to be used for this operation

Status Monitor/Cancel

▲▼◀▶ OK

1 Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel).

2 Select <Fax Forwarding Errors> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
 Fax Forwarding Error
```

3 Select a job using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax Forwarding Errors
 12:52AM
 12:54AM
```

Detailed information of the forwarding error job is displayed.

```
Details
 <Delete>
 <Print>
 <Forward>
 Job Number: 0004
```

To delete/print a job

(1) Select <Delete> or <Print> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Details
 <Delete>
 <Print>
 <Forward>
 Job Number: 0004
```

<Delete>	Press to delete jobs.
<Print>	Print the job contents.

(2) Select <Yes> using [◀] or [▶] and press [OK].

```
Delete?


 Yes      No
```

For job forwarding

(1) You can specify where to forward. You can specify only by the following approaches:

▶ "Specifying destinations using coded dial codes" (→P.6-5)
▶ "Specifying destinations using the address book" (→P.6-5)

```
 🖷 CANON 0123456789
 👥 GroupA 2 Destin...
 🖷★ User01 01234567...

    [ ✎ ]  All  Fav. ▶
```

Managing Faxes Stored in Memory

Manage faxes stored in memory.

Checking and Canceling Fax Jobs

Check the details of the fax currently being sent or waiting to be sent. Cancel faxes that you decide not to send.

Keys to be used for this operation

Status Monitor/Cancel

▲▼◀▶ OK

1 Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel).

2 Press [▲] or [▼] to select <TX Job> and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Device Status
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
```

3 Select <Job Status> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
TX Job Status/History
 Job Status
 Job History
```

4 Press [▲] or [▼] to select the job that you want to check or cancel and press [OK].

```
TX Job Status
 🖹 12:52AM Sending
 🖹 12:54AM Scanning
```

The details of the selected job is displayed.

```
Details
 <Cancel>
 Job Number: 0004
 Status: Sending
 Time: 01/01 12:52AM
```

To cancel the job
(1) Select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Details
 <Cancel>
 Job Number: 0004
 Status: Sending
 Time: 01/01 12:52AM
```

(2) Select <Yes> using [◀] or [▶] and press [OK].

```
Cancel?

  Yes        No
```

The sending job is canceled. Fax transmission to all the destinations will be canceled for sequential broadcast.
(3) Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel) to close the screen.

To only check the details of the selected job
Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel) after you have checked the details of the selected job to close the screen.

Combining and Printing the Received Documents You Saved

Instead of printing at "Memory Lock Settings" (→P.6-28) during receiving, documents saved in a memory are combined and printed altogether.

🛢 NOTE -

Printing documents saved in a memory during receiving
You cannot individually choose and print a document. You cannot preview the document content, either.

When <Memory Lock Time> is set
At <Memory Lock End Time>, you can combine and print received documents saved in a memory from the <Memory Lock Start Time> to the <Memory Lock End Time>.

- -

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <System Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 USB Direct Print Se...
 Printer Settings
 Adjustment/Maintena...
 System Settings
```

3 Select <Communication Management Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
System Settings
 Device Information ...
 Dept. ID Management...
 Security Settings
 Communication Manage
```

4 Select <Memory Lock Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

When <Memory Lock PIN> is set, enter the number using the numeric keys and press [OK].

```
Communication Mgt. Set
 Fax Settings
 Memory Lock Settings
```

5 Select <Off> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Memory Lock Settings
 Off
 On
```

Fax documents saved in the memory are combined and printed.

6 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Checking and Deleting Received Faxes

Check the details of faxes stored in memory. Delete faxes that you no longer need.

NOTE --------------------------------------

About faxes stored in memory
You can specify forwarding destinations.
▶ "Forwarding Fax Documents" (→P.6-16)
You can combine and print documents saved in the memory instead of printing during receiving.
▶ "Combining and Printing the Received Documents You Saved" (→P.6-19)

Keys to be used for this operation

Status Monitor/Cancel

▲▼◄► OK

1 Press [☐] (Status Monitor/Cancel).

2 Select <RX Job> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Device Status
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
```

3 Select <Job Status> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
RX Job Status/History
 Job Status
 Job History
```

4 Select the job that you want to check or delete using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
RX Job Status
 12:52AM Receiving
 12:54AM Waiting: Prin
```

The details of the job is displayed.

```
Details
 <Delete>
 <Forward>
 Job Number: 0004
 Status: Waiting to ...
```

To delete the job

(1) Select <Delete> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Details
 <Delete>
 <Forward>
 Job Number: 0004
 Status: Waiting to ...
```

(2) Select <Yes> using [◀] or [▶] and press [OK].

```
Delete?


    Yes        No
```

The job is deleted.

(3) Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel) to close the screen.

To only check the details of the selected job

Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel) after you have checked the details of the selected job to close the screen.

Checking the History of Received/Sent Faxes

Check the history of received or sent faxes.

Keys to be used for this operation

Status Monitor/Cancel

▲▼ OK

1 Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel).

2 Select <TX Job> or <RX Job> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Device Status
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
```

<TX Job>	Confirm the sending job history.
<RX Job>	Confirm the received job history.

3 Select <Job History> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
TX Job Status/History
 Job Status
 Job History
```

4 Select the job that you want to check using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

The details of the job is displayed.

```
TX Job History
 ⊟ 05:10AM NG #995
 ⊟ 05:06AM NG #099
```

5 Select the item that you want to check using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Details
 Job Number: 0004
 Result: NG #995
 Started: 01/01 12:5...
 Duration: 00'00
```

6 Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel) to close the screen.

Using the Fax Functions

Changing the Default Fax Settings

The default settings are a set of standard settings predetermined by the machine. These settings become effective when the machine is turned ON and OFF, or when [ ] (Reset) is pressed to revert to the default settings.
You can change the following default settings based on your needs.

- Resolution
- Density
- 2-Sided Original (MF8380Cdw Only)
- Sharpness

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <Fax Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 Timer Settings
 Common Settings
 Copy Settings
 Fax Settings
```

3 Select <TX Function Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax Settings
 Basic Settings
 TX Function Settings
 RX Function Settings
 RX Print Settings
```

4 Select <Change Defaults> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
TX Function Settings
 Change Defaults
 Register Unit Name ...
 ECM TX
 Pause Time
```

5 Select the item using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

- Resolution/Density/2-Sided Original (MF8380Cdw Only)/ Sharpness
  For more information, see "Changing the Scan Settings (Fax)" (→P.6-3)

```
Change Defaults
 <Apply>
 Resolution: 200 x 10
 Density: ±0
 2-Sided Original: O...
```

6 Select <Apply> using [▲] or [▼] after you have specified the setting and press [OK].

```
Change Defaults
 <Apply>
 Resolution: 200 x 1...
 Density: ±0
 2-Sided Original: O...
```

7 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Changing Fax Settings (Settings that Can Be Specified Using the [Menu] Button)

Change the settings for sending and receiving faxes.
For details on the procedure for setting specifications or the setting items, see the next items.

▷ "The steps to take for configuring the send settings" (→P.6-23)
▷ "Options" (→P.6-23)
▷ "The steps to take for configuring the receiving settings" (→P.6-25)
▷ "Options" (→P.6-26)
▷ "The steps to take for configuring the system settings" (→P.6-27)
▷ "Options" (→P.6-28)

The steps to take for configuring the send settings

Follow the steps in the procedure below to configure the send settings.
The procedure describes the steps to change the "ECM TX" setting.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <Fax Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 Timer Settings
 Common Settings
 Copy Settings
 Fax Settings
```

3 Select <TX Function Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax Settings
 Basic Settings
 TX Function Settings
 RX Function Settings
 RX Print Settings
```

4 Select <ECM TX> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
TX Function Settings
 Change Defaults
 Register Unit Name ...
 ECM TX
 Pause Time
```

5 Select <Off> or <On> using [▲] or [▼], and press [OK].

```
ECM TX
 Off
 On
```

* Select <Apply> when <Apply> appears on the screen after you have specified the setting and press [OK].

6 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

The procedure is complete.

Options

Configure the following options to send a fax.

Fax Settings		
Basic Settings	▷ "Register Unit Telephone Number" (→P.6-24)	
	▷ "Select Line Type" (→P.6-24)	
	▷ "Off-Hook Alarm" (→P.6-24)	
TX Function Settings	▷ "Change Defaults" (→P.6-24)	
	▷ "Register Unit Name (Fax)" (→P.6-24)	
	▷ "ECM TX" (→P.6-24)	
	▷ "Pause Time" (→P.6-24)	
	▷ "Auto Redial" (→P.6-24)	
	▷ "Sender ID" (→P.6-25)	
	▷ "Check Dial Tone Before Sending" (→P.6-25)	

6-23

Register Unit Telephone Number

Register your machine's fax number.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <Basic Settings> →
<Register Unit Telephone Number>

How to register the fax number
Enter up to 20 digits using the numeric keys.
You can also enter the [+].

Select Line Type

Change this option when you cannot send a fax.
Contact your local telephone company when you are not
sure of the line type that you are using.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <Basic Settings> →
<Select Line Type>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Pulse	Select this setting when you are using a pulse line.
Tone	Select this setting when you are using a tone line.

Off-Hook Alarm

Specify whether to sound an alarm when the telephone
handset is left unhooked and adjust the volume.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <Basic Settings> →
<Off-Hook Alarm>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off		No alarm sounds.
On	Off-Hook Alarm Volume: 1 to 3	The alarm sounds at the specified volume.

Change Defaults

Change the default settings, which become effective
when the machine is turned ON and OFF or [✐] (Reset) is
pressed.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu)→ <Fax Settings> → <TX Function
Settings> → <Change Defaults>

Settings
See the following section for more information.
▷ "Changing the Default Fax Settings" (→P.6-22)

Register Unit Name (Fax)

Register your name or company's name (sender's name).
Once the information has been registered, it is printed at
the top of each page that you are sending.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <TX Function
Settings> → <Register Unit Name (Fax)>

How to register the sender's name
Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters.
▷ "Entering Text" (→P.1-11)

NOTE

Where the sender's name appears on the page
The information is printed at the top of each page that you are
sending.

Sending Date/Time — Fax/Telephone Number (FAX No.) — Sender Name (Unit Name) — Page Number — Telephone Number Mark

01/01/2011 02:07 PM FAX 123XXXXXX CANON ☑0001/0001

ECM TX

The ECM (Error Correction Mode) detects and corrects
errors that occur during fax transmissions. It helps in
minimizing sending errors caused by a poor connection.

NOTE

Check if the ECM is enabled on the receiving fax machine
The ECM is effective only when it is enabled on both machines.

An error occurs even when the ECM is enabled
The error may be caused by poor telephone line conditions.

When telephone line conditions are poor
It may take additional time to send your fax if a problem occurs
when sending over the telephone line.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <TX Function
Settings> → <ECM TX>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Disable the ECM.
On	Enable the ECM.

Pause Time

Press [○] (Pause) to specify the pause length.
For the instructions on how to enter a pause, see "Sending a
Fax Abroad (Adding Pauses)" (→P.6-10).

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <TX Function
Settings> → <Pause Time>

Setting
(Bold: Default setting)

1 to **2** to 15
(seconds)

Auto Redial

Enable auto redial for automatically redialing the fax
number when the line is busy or a sending error occurs.
Specify the number of redial attempts and the interval
between these attempts.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <TX Function
Settings> → <Auto Redial>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off		Disable Auto Redial See "Redialing (Manual Redialing)" (→P.6-8) to redial the number manually.
On	Redial Times: 1 to **2** to 10 (times)	Set the number of redial attempts.
	Redial Interval: **2** to 99 (minutes)	Set the interval (in minutes) between redial attempts.
	Redial When Err Occurs: Off, **On**	Specify whether to redial the number when a sending error occurs.

Sender ID

Specify whether to add the sender ID to the fax that you are sending.
The sender ID is printed at the top of each page that you are sending, along with the fax number and sender's name. This helps the recipient to identify the sender.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <TX Function Settings> → <Sender ID>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off		No sender ID is added.
On	Print Location: On Image, **Above Image**	Select the location where the sender ID is printed on the page.
	Mark No. as: TEL/FAX: **FAX**, TEL	Select the symbol to be added in front of the telephone number.

Check Dial Tone Before Sending

Specify whether to check for a dial tone before dialing.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <TX Function Settings> → <Check Dial Tone Before Sending>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Do not check for a dial tone.
On	Check for a dial tone before dialing.

The steps to take for configuring the receiving settings

Follow the steps in the procedure below to configure the fax receiving settings.
The procedure describes the steps to change the "ECM RX" setting.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <Fax Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 Timer Settings
 Common Settings
 Copy Settings
 Fax Settings
```

3 Select <RX Function Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax Settings
 Basic Settings
 TX Function Settings
 RX Function Settings
 RX Print Settings
```

4 Select <ECM RX> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
RX Function Settings
 ECM RX
 Incoming Ring
 Remote RX
 Auto RX Switch
```

5 Select <Off> or <On> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
ECM RX
 Off
 On
```

* Select <Apply> when <Apply> appears on the screen after you have specified the setting and press [OK].

6 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

The procedure is complete.

Options

Configure the following options to receive a fax.

Fax Settings		
RX Function Settings	▶ "ECM RX" (→P.6-26)	
	▶ "Incoming Ring" (→P.6-26)	
	▶ "Remote RX" (→P.6-26)	
	▶ "Auto RX Switch" (→P.6-26)	
RX Print Settings	▶ "2-Sided Printing (MF8380Cdw Only)" (→P.6-26)	
	▶ "Reduce RX Size" (→P.6-26)	
	▶ "RX Page Footer" (→P.6-27)	
	▶ "Continue Printing When Toner Is Low" (→P.6-27)	

ECM RX

The ECM (Error Correction Mode) detects and corrects errors that occur during fax transmissions. It helps in minimizing sending errors caused by a poor connection.

NOTE -

Check if the ECM is enabled on the receiving fax machine

The ECM is effective only when it is enabled on both machines.

An error occurs even when the ECM is enabled

The error may be caused by poor telephone line conditions.

When telephone line conditions are poor

It may take additional time to receive your fax if a problem occurs when sending over the telephone line.

- -

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Function Settings> → <ECM RX>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Disable the ECM.
On	Enable the ECM.

Incoming Ring

Specify whether or not the external telephone rings on an incoming call when <RX Mode> is set to <Auto> or <Fax/Tel Auto Switch>.
You can set the incoming call ring time.
The machine automatically starts receiving a fax after the external telephone keeps ringing for a specified length of time.
The machine's speaker rings on an incoming fax only when <RX Mode> is set to <Fax/Tel Auto Switch>.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Function Settings> → <Incoming Ring>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off		The telephone does not ring on an incoming call.
On	Ring Times: 1 to **2** to 99 (times)	The telephone rings on an incoming call. You can set the incoming call ring time in rings in <Ring Times>.

Remote RX

Specify whether to receive faxes remotely by dialing the ID number using the push-buttons of the external telephone connected to the machine when an incoming call comes. If you use the pulse line, press [✳] (Tone) and then dial the Remote RX ID.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Function Settings> → <Remote RX>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off		Disable remote retrieval.
On	Remote RX ID: 00 to **25** to 99	Enable remote retrieval. You can specify the ID number in <Remote RX ID>.

Auto RX Switch

Set the incoming call ring time before the machine switches to the fax mode automatically. This option can be enabled when the <RX Mode> is set to <Manual>.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Function Settings> → <Auto RX Switch>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off		The machine does not switch to the fax mode automatically.
On	Incoming Ring Time: 1 to **15** to 99 (seconds)	The machine switches to the fax mode automatically after the specified length of time.

2-Sided Printing (MF8380Cdw Only)

Enable this option to print on both sides of paper. This saves excessive paper consumption.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Print Settings> → <2-Sided Printing>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Print on only one side of paper.
On	Print on both sides of paper.

Reduce RX Size

Enable this option to scale the image to fit on the selected paper size or reduce the image by a specific percentage when you receive a fax.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Print Settings> → <Reduce RX Size>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off		No image reduction.
On	Reduction Ratio: **Auto**, 97%, 95%, 90%, 75%	<Auto>: Reduce the image automatically to fit onto the selected paper size. <97%>, <95%>, <90%>, <75%>: Reduce the image by the predetermined ratio.
	Reduction Method: Vertical/Horizontal, **Vertical Only**	<Vertical/Horizontal>: Reduce the image in vertical and horizontal directions. <Vertical Only>: Reduce the image in the vertical direction only.

RX Page Footer

Specify whether to print the reception date, time, job ID, and page number at the bottom of the page when printing received faxes.

How to access the option

☞ [⊛](Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Print Settings> → <RX Page Footer>

Settings

(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Do not print the page footer.
On	Print the page footer.

Continue Printing When Toner Is Low

Specify whether to continue printing received faxes when the toner is nearly empty.

IMPORTANT

If <Continue Printing When Toner Is Low> is set to <On>

Note that the output may not be clear, as subtle details such as thin lines and light colors may not be clearly reproduced, due to a small amount of toner remaining inside the toner cartridge. Plus, faxes are deleted once they have been printed.

How to access the option

☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <Fax Settings> → <RX Print Settings> → <Continue Printing When Toner Is Low>

Settings

(Bold: Default setting)

Off	The machine does not continue printing received faxes.
On	The machine continues printing received faxes.

The steps to take for configuring the system settings

Follow the steps in the procedure below to configure the system settings.

The procedure describes the steps to change the "TX Start Speed" setting.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <System Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
  USB Direct Print Se…
  Printer Settings
  Adjustment/Maintena…
  System Settings
```

3 Select <Communication Management Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
System Settings
  Device Information …
  Dept. ID Management…
  Security Settings
  Communication Manage
```

4 Select <Fax Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Communication Mgt. Set
  Fax Settings
  Memory Lock Settings
```

5 Select <TX Start Speed> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Fax Settings
  TX Start Speed
  RX Start Speed
```

6 Select the send start speed using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
TX Start Speed
 33600 bps
 14400 bps
 9600 bps
 7200 bps
```

* Select <Apply> when <Apply> appears on the screen after you have specified the setting and press [OK].

7 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

The procedure is complete.

Options

Configure the following options to receive a fax.

System Settings		
Communication Management Settings	Fax Settings	▶ "TX Start Speed" (→P.6-28) ▶ "RX Start Speed" (→P.6-28)
	▶ "Memory Lock Settings" (→P.6-28)	
▶ "Select Country/Region" (→P.6-28)		
Restrict TX Function	"Address Book PIN" (→P.6-28)	
	"Restrict New Destinations" (→P.6-29)	
	"Allow Fax Driver TX" (→P.6-29)	
	"Restrict History TX" (→P.6-29)	
	"Fax No. Confirmation Re-Entry" (→P.6-29)	
	"Restrict Sequential Broadcast" (→P.6-29)	

TX Start Speed

Change the transmission start speed if you are experiencing a transmission problem.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Communication Management Settings> → <Fax Settings> → <TX Start Speed>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

33600 bps, 14400 bps, 9600 bps, 7200 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps

RX Start Speed

Change the reception start speed if you are experiencing a problem.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Communication Management Settings> → <Fax Settings> → <RX Start Speed>

Setting
(Bold: Default setting)

33600 bps, 14400 bps, 9600 bps, 7200 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps

Memory Lock Settings

Normally, received documents are immediately printed. However, you can specify whether or not to store received faxes in memory before printing. You can then print the stored faxes at any time or delete them without printing to save paper.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Communication Management Settings> → <Memory Lock Settings> (*)
* If <Memory Lock PIN> is specified, use the numeric keys [0] to [9] to enter those numbers, and then press [OK].

Settings
(Boldface: Default setting)

Off		Disable Memory Lock.
On	Memory Lock PIN: Seven-digit number	Once the PIN is set, you are prompted to enter it every time you change or disable the Memory Lock mode settings.
	Print Report: Off, **On**	Specify whether to print the RX result report when receiving a fax. Enable "Receive Results" to enable this setting.
	Memory Lock Time: **Off**, On	When <On> is set, received faxes are stored in memory only for a specified length of time. Set <Memory Lock Start Time> and <Memory Lock End Time> respectively.

NOTE ---------------------------------------

Memory Lock PIN
- Press [OK] without entering any numbers when you do not want to set the PIN.
- You cannot set a PIN consisting only of <0> (<0000000>).
- When you set a PIN starting with <0>, the PIN is set in the following manner.
  Example: When you enter <02> or <002>, the PIN is set as <0000002>.

Memory Lock Settings operations
- When memory lock settings are changed from <On> to <Off>, the documents saved in the memory up to then are combined and printed.
  ▶ "Combining and Printing the Received Documents You Saved" (→P.6-19)
- At <Memory Lock End Time>, you can combine and print received documents saved in the memory from the <Memory Lock Start Time> to the <Memory Lock End Time>.

Select Country/Region

Specify the country or region where the machine is used.

IMPORTANT ----------------------

After you have configured the option
Restart the machine for the changes to take effect.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Select Country/Region>

Setting
(Bold: Default setting*)

United States (US), Canada (CA), Brazil (BR), Mexico (MX), Other

* The default setting may vary depending on the setting selected at initial power-on.

Address Book PIN

Set a PIN to protect the address book. You are prompted to enter the correct PIN to register, edit, or delete destinations.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Restrict TX Function> → <Address Book PIN>

How to set a PIN
Enter up to a 7-digit number.
To cancel the entered PIN, clear the numbers and press [OK].

Restrict New Destinations

Enable this option to restrict registering new destinations in the address book. When this option is enabled, you are restricted to do the following.
- Specifying a destination using the numeric keys
- Registering new destinations in the Favorites list or coded dial codes in the address book
- Editing the destinations registered in the Favorites list or coded dial codes in the address book

✋ **IMPORTANT** ─────────────

Restriction exceptions

Entering new destinations from the external telephone is not restricted.

When settings are not immediately applied

During fax sending operation including new destinations or manual redialing operation, restriction settings may not be applied immediately.

📄 **NOTE** -

Redial restrictions

When <Restrict New Dest.> is set to <On>, the saved fax sending history up to then is deleted for preventing those new destinations in the history from being redialed.

- -

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Restrict TX Function> → <Restrict New Destinations>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	No restrictions.
On	You are restricted to register new destinations or edit the destinations registered in the Favorites list or coded dial codes.

Allow Fax Driver TX

Specify whether to allow sending faxes from the fax driver installed on your computer.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Restrict TX Function> → <Allow Fax Driver TX>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Disallow sending faxes from the fax driver installed on your computer.
On	Allow sending faxes from the fax driver installed on your computer.

Restrict History TX

Specify whether to restrict sending faxes from the history.

✋ **IMPORTANT** ─────────────

When settings are not immediately applied

During manual redialing operations, for example, restriction settings may not be immediately applied.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Restrict TX Function> → <Restrict History TX>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Allow sending faxes from the history.
On	Disallow sending faxes from the history.

Fax No. Confirmation Re-Entry

Specify whether to require confirmation before sending a fax. When this option is enabled, you are prompted to enter the fax number again before sending a fax.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Restrict TX Function> → <Fax No. Confirmation Re-Entry>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Confirmation is not required.
On	You are prompted to enter the fax number for confirmation.

Restrict Sequential Broadcast

Specify whether to restrict sending faxes to multiple destinations simultaneously.

How to access the option
☞ [⊛] (Menu) → <System Settings> → <Restrict TX Function> → <Restrict Sequential Broadcast>

Settings
(Bold: Default setting)

Off	Allow sending faxes to multiple destinations simultaneously.
Confirm Sequential Broadcast	The confirmation screen is displayed when you are sending faxes to multiple destinations simultaneously.
Reject Sequential Broadcast	Disallow sending faxes to multiple destinations simultaneously.

Using the Scan Functions

The documents scanned by the machine can be stored in a computer or a USB memory device. You can also send scanned documents by e-mail or to a file server (MF8380Cdw only).

* If you are a Macintosh user, see the Mac Scanner Driver Guide.
  To view how to display the Mac Scanner Driver Guide, see "For Macintosh Users" (→P.11-5).

Basic Scan Operations

Scanning Using Keys on the Operation Panel

You can scan a document using the keys on the operation panel.

> **NOTE** ------------------------------------
>
> **Using the shortcut keys**
>
> The shortcut keys allow you to register your computer and send your scans to it with only a few steps. For details, see "Performing a Scan Using a Shortcut Key" (→P.7-3).
>
> **To scan documents by operating a computer**
>
> See "Scanning" in the e-Manual.

Keys to be used for this operation

SCAN

▲▼OK

1 Place your document.

> "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
> "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 Press [SCAN].

3 Select <Computer> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select the scan type.

Computer
Remote Scanner
Memory Media
```

4 Select the destination using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Specify destination.
EXAMPLE1
EXAMPLE2
```

- When a computer connected via a USB cable is included in the displayed destinations:
  The USB-connected computer is listed at the top.
- When only one computer is connected to the machine via a USB cable:
  This screen is not displayed.
- When more than 10 computers are connected to the machine simultaneously:
  Up to 10 computers can be displayed as a list of computers connected to the machine. (Scanning cannot be performed to the eleventh and subsequent computers. Reduce the number of computers connected to the machine over the network.)

  ☞ e-Manual→Scanning→Scanning Paper Documents and Saving Them to a Computer (USB & Network Connection)→Registering the Scanner in MF Network Scan Utility

5 Specify the scan settings using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select Scan Type
Scan: Press OK
Color Scan
B&W Scan
Custom 1
```

The scanner settings are specified by default as follows.

	Scan Mode	Resolution	File Type	PDF Settings
Color Scan	Color	300 dpi	PDF	Searchable/High
B&W Scan	Black and White	300 dpi	TIFF	-
Custom 1	Color	300 dpi	JPEG/Exif	-
Custom 2	Color	300 dpi	PDF	Searchable/Standard

Scanning starts.

When scanning cannot be performed

You cannot perform a scan while the MF Toolbox setup screen is displayed.

Click [　] to close the screen before starting a scan.

When scanning is complete

The scans are saved in the appropriate folder.

When additional pages can be scanned on the platen glass

Proceed to step 6.

6 **To scan the next page, select <Scan Next Original> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].**

```
Select Next Action
 <Scan Next Original>
 <Store and Finish>
 <Cancel>
 Confirm Destination
```

To cancel scanning

(1) Select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼)] and press [OK].
(2) Select <Yes> using [▲] or [▼)] and press [OK].

To check the destination

Select <Confirm Destination> using [▲] or [▼)] and press [OK].

7 **Select <Store and Finish> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].**

```
Select Next Action
 <Scan Next Original>
 <Store and Finish>
 <Cancel>
 Confirm Destination
```

The scans are saved in the appropriate folder.

NOTE

The default save location:

Once scanning is complete, a folder is automatically displayed to which the scanned images are saved. By default, a folder bearing the scanning date is created inside the [Pictures] (or [My Pictures]) folder in [My Documents].

To change the scanner settings:

You can re-specify the save location, file format, resolution, and other settings from a computer.

☞ e-Manual → Scanning → Scanning Paper Documents and Saving Them to a Computer (USB & Network Connection) → Using the MF Toolbox

---

Performing a Scan Using a Shortcut Key

Register destinations and frequently used settings in shortcut keys in advance, to perform a scan easily without needing to manually enter a destination and specify required settings.

Registering a Shortcut Key/Confirming the Destination Registered in the Shortcut Key

Keys to be used for this operation

▲▼OK

1 **Press [　] (Menu).**

2 **Select <Scan Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].**

```
Menu
 Common Settings
 Copy Settings
 Fax Settings
 Scan Settings
```

3 **Select <Shortcut Key Settings> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].**

```
Scan Settings
 TX Function Settings
 Memory Media Settings
 Output File Image Set
 Shortcut Key Settings
```

To store a new shortcut:

(1) Select <Register> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Shortcut Key Settings
 Register
 Confirm Destination
```

(2) Select the shortcut key that you want to register using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select Shortcut Key
 Scan  ▶ PC1
 Scan  ▶ PC2
```

(3) Select the connection method using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Specify destination
 Off
 USB Connection
 Network Connection
```

(4) Select the destination using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
 • When a computer connected via a USB cable is included in the displayed destinations:
   The USB-connected computer is listed at the top.
 • When only one computer is connected to the machine via a USB cable:
   This screen is not displayed.
 • When more than 10 computers are connected to the machine simultaneously:
   Up to 10 computers can be displayed as a list of computers connected to the machine. (Scanning cannot be performed to the eleventh and subsequent computers. Reduce the number of computers connected to the machine over the network.)
☞ e-Manual→Scanning→Scanning Paper Documents and Saving Them to a Computer (USB & Network Connection)→Registering the Scanner in MF Network Scan Utility

(5) Specify the scan settings using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select Scan Type
 Color Scan
 B&W Scan
 Custom 1
 Custom 2
```

The scanner settings are specified by default as follows.

	Scan Mode	Resolution	File Type	PDF Settings
Color Scan	Color	300 dpi	PDF	Searchable/High
B & W Scan	Black and white	300 dpi	TIFF	–
Custom 1	Color	300 dpi	JPEG/Exif	–
Custom 2	Color	300 dpi	PDF	Searchable/Standard

To confirm the destination registered in the shortcut key:
(1) Select <Confirm Destination> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Shortcut Key Settings
 Register
 Confirm Destination
```

(2) Select the destination that you want to confirm using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Confirm Destination
 USB Connedted PC
 Color Scan
```

4 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Performing a Scan Using a Shortcut Key

Keys to be used for this operation

Scan ▶ PC1
Scan ▶ PC2

▲▼OK

1 Place your document.

▶ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P. 2-2)

2 Press [⊡] (Scan > PC1 or Scan > PC2) into which the destination that you want to select is registered.
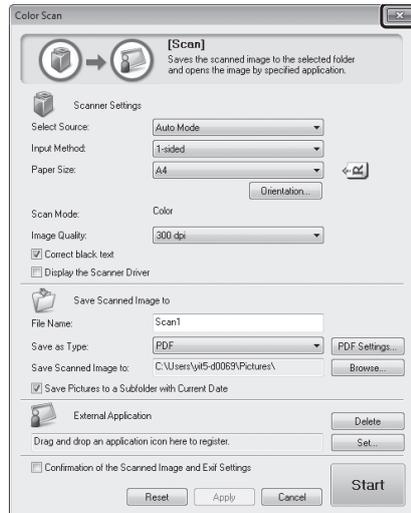
Scanning starts.

When scanning cannot be performed
You cannot perform a scan while the MF Toolbox setup screen is displayed.
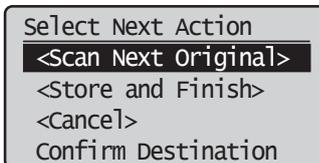Click [✕] to close the screen before starting a scan.

SCAN

▲▼OK   Start

3 To scan the next page, select <Scan Next Original> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select Next Action
 <Scan Next Original>
 <Store and Finish>
 <Cancel>
 Confirm Destination
```
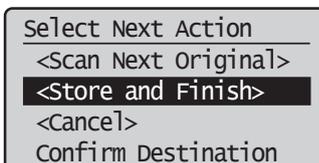
To cancel scanning
(1) Select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
(2) Select <Yes> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
To check the destination
Select <Confirm Destination> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

4 Select <Store and Finish> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select Next Action
 <Scan Next Original>
 <Store and Finish>
 <Cancel>
 Confirm Destination
```

The scans are saved in the appropriate folder.

> **NOTE** -

The default save location:

Once scanning is complete, a folder is automatically displayed to which the scanned images are saved. By default, a folder bearing the scanning date is created inside the [Pictures] (or [My Pictures]) folder in [My Documents].

To change the scan settings:

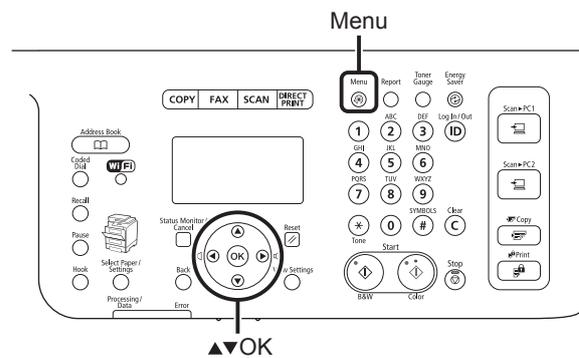You can re-specify the save location, file format, resolution, and other settings from a computer.

☞ e-Manual→Scanning→Scanning Paper Documents and Saving Them to a Computer (USB & Network Connection)→Using the MF Toolbox
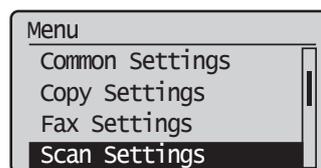
Saving Scanned Documents to USB Memory Device

You can save scanned documents to USB memory device inserted in the USB port.
This section describes the basic procedure.

> **IMPORTANT** -

The USB memory device port on the machine
• The port supports USB 1.1.
• Do not insert anything other than USB memory device.

Supported file systems and memory capacity
Supported file systems and memory capacity include the following. You can have your USB memory device formatted with one of the following file systems on your computer.
• FAT16: up to 2 GB
• FAT32: up to 32GB
For details, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.

1 Insert a USB memory device to the USB port.

The machine will begin to read the device when USB memory is inserted. Do not touch or remove the device from the port.

2 Place your document.

> "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
> "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

3 Press [SCAN].

4 Select <Memory Media> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select the scan type.

 Computer
 Remote Scanner
 Memory Media
```

5 Specify the scan settings based on your purpose of the scan.

The following settings can be changed.
For details on the setting procedure, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.
• Scan Size
• File Format
• Density
• Original Orientation
• Original Type
• 2-Sided Original (MF8380Cdw Only)
• Sharpness
• Data Size
The settings specified here are effective only for the current task. To apply these settings to all tasks, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.

Using the Scan Functions

6 Press [ ] (Color) or [ ] (B & W).

For Color Scan	Press [ ] (Color).
For Black and White Scan	Press [ ] (B&W).

Scanning starts.

When additional pages can be scanned on the platen glass
(1) Place the next page and press [ ] (Color) or [ ] (B & W).
(2) To finish scanning, select <Store and Finish> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Scan Next: Press Start
 <Store and Finish>
 <Cancel>
```

When scanning is complete, the scanned document is saved to the USB memory device.

Folder and file names that can be saved

Folder name	The "SCAN_00" folder is created in the top level directory (root folder) in the USB memory device. Scanned document files are saved in this folder. When the "SCAN_00" folder reaches limit, the "SCAN_01" folder is automatically created. Folders up to "SCAN_99" are automatically created when the current working folder becomes full.
File name	File names between "SCAN0000.XXX" and "SCAN9999.XXX" are provided. ("XXX" is the extension for the file format.) The two-digit folder number is provided in the fifth and sixth characters from the left. A maximum of 100 files can be saved in a folder.

When removing the USB memory device from the port
(1) Press [ ] (Reset).
(2) Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel).
(3) Select <Device Status> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Status Monitor/Cancel
 Device Status
 Copy/Print Job
 TX Job
 RX Job
```

(4) Select <Remove Memory Media> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Device Status
 Paper Information
 Remove Memory Media
 Check Counter
 Secure Print Memory ...
```

(5) Remove the USB memory device.
(6) Press [ ] (Status Monitor/Cancel) after you have checked the details of the selected job to close the screen.

E-mailing Scanned Documents (MF8380Cdw Only)

You can attach scanned documents to e-mails and send them to a specified destination. The scans are converted into PDF files and sent to the mail server.

NOTE -

Preparing to Use the E-mail Functions
See "Network Settings" in the e-Manual and configure your e-mail settings before using the e-mail function.

- -

Keys to be used for this operation

SCAN

▲▼OK   Start

1 Place your document.

▶ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 Press [SCAN].

3 Select <E-Mail> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select the scan type.

 Remote Scanner
 Memory Media
 E-Mail
```

4 Specify the destination.

Specify destinations in the following ways.
For details on the setting procedure, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.
- input directly
- by selecting a coded dial code
- from the address book
- under sequential broadcasting

5 Specify the scan settings based on your purpose of the scan.

The following settings can be changed.
For details on the setting procedure, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.
- Scan Size
- File Format
- Density
- Original Orientation
- Original Type
- 2-Sided Original
- Sharpness
- Data Size

The settings specified here are effective only for the current task. To make the settings effective for all e-mail send operations, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.

6 Specify the e-mail settings as needed.

The following settings can be changed.
For details on the setting procedure, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.
- Subject/Body
- Reply-to
- Priority

The settings specified here are effective only for the current task. To make the settings effective for all e-mail send operations, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.

7 Press [⬙] (Color) or [⬙] (B&W).

For Color Scan	Press [⬙] (Color).
For Black and White Scan	Press [⬙] (B&W).

Scanning starts.

When additional pages can be scanned on the platen glass

(1) Place the next page and press [⬙] (Color) or [⬙] (B & W).

```
Scan Next: Press Start
<Start Sending>
<Cancel>
Destinations: 1
No. of TX Pages: 1
```

* To cancel scanning, select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK] → select <Yes> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
* To check the destination, select <Destinations> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
* To check the number of scanned pages, select <No. of TX Pages> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

(2) To finish scanning, select <Start Sending> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

When scanning is complete, the scanned document is sent as e-mail attachment.

Sending Scanned Documents to a File Server (MF8380Cdw Only)

You can send scanned documents to a file server. The scans are converted into PDF, JPEG, or TIFF files and saved in the specified folder.

📎 **NOTE** -

Preparation for Scanning (File Server)

Before sending to a file server, see "Network Settings" in the e-Manual and configure the send settings.

- -

Keys to be used for this operation

SCAN

▲▼OK   Start

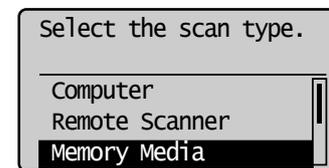## 1 Place your document.

☞ "Placing Documents" (→P.2-4)
☞ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)

2 Press [SCAN].

3 Select <Windows (SMB)> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Select the scan type.

Memory Media
E-Mail
Windows (SMB)
```

4 Specify the destination.

Specify destinations in the following ways.
For details on the setting procedure, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.
- by selecting a coded dial code
- from the address book

Using the Scan Functions

5 Specify the scan settings based on your purpose of the scan.

The following settings can be changed.
For details on the setting procedure, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.
- Scan Size
- File Format
- Density
- Original Orientation
- Original Type
- 2-Sided Original
- Sharpness
- Data Size

The settings specified here are effective only for the current task. To make the settings effective for all send operations, see "Scanning" in the e-Manual.

6 Press [🔘] (Color) or [🔘] (B&W).

For Color Scan	Press [🔘] (Color).
For Black and White Scan	Press [🔘] (B&W).

Scanning starts.
When additional pages can be scanned on the platen glass
(1) Place the next page and press [🔘] (Color) or [🔘] (B & W).

```
Scan Next: Press Start
 <Start Sending>
 <Cancel>
 Destinations: 1
 No. of TX Pages: 1
```

* To cancel scanning, select <Cancel> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK] → select <Yes> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
* To check the destination, select <Destinations> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
* To check the number of scanned pages, select <No. of TX Pages> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].
(2) To finish scanning, select <Start Sending> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

When scanning is complete, the scanned document is sent to the file server.

Chapter | **8**

Maintenance

This section describes the maintenance of this machine, replacement of the toner cartridges, and so on.

Cleaning the Machine

Before cleaning the machine, see "Precautions When Cleaning the Machine" (→P.8-4).

Cleaning the Exterior

Clean the exterior of the machine and ventilation slots.

1 Turn OFF the power switch and disconnect the power cord.

2 Clean the exterior of the machine with a soft, well wrung out cloth dampened with water or mild detergent diluted with water.

3 Wait for the machine to dry completely before reconnecting the power cord, and then turn ON the power.

Cleaning the Fixing Unit

In the following cases, the fixing unit may be dirty. Clean the fixing unit.
- When black streaks appear on the printed paper
- When a toner cartridge is replaced

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Adjustment/Maintenance>, and then press [OK].

```
Menu
 Scan Settings
 USB Direct Print Se…
 Printer Settings
 Adjustment/Maintenan
```

3 Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Clean Fixing Unit>, and then press [OK].

```
Adjustment/Maintenance
 Toner Saver Mode
 Black Text Processi…
 Special Processing
 Clean Fixing Unit
```

4 Confirm that paper is loaded, and then press [OK].

Load the paper indicated in the display
Cleaning starts. It takes approx. 68 seconds for MF8380Cdw and approx. 74 seconds for MF8080Cw.

```
Supported paper:
Size: A4, LTR
Type: P1/2, Rec, Clr
 Start
```

* It is recommended that you use plain paper to clean the fixing unit.

If cleaning does not start

When there are jobs stored in the memory, this function is not available.

5 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Maintenance

Cleaning the ITB

If dirt sticks to the transfer belt and results in a deterioration in print quality, clean the transfer belt inside the machine.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Adjustment/ Maintenance>, and then press [OK].

```
Menu
 Scan Settings
 USB Direct Print Se…
 Printer Settings
 Adjustment/Maintenan
```

3 Press [▲] or [▼] to select <Clean ITB>, and then press [OK].

```
Adjustment/Maintenance
 Black Text Processi…
 Special Processing
 Clean Fixing Unit
 Clean ITB
```

4 Press [OK].

Cleaning starts. It takes approx. 51 seconds for MF8380Cdw and approx. 83 seconds for MF8080Cw.

```
Clean ITB
 Start
```

5 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Cleaning the Platen Glass

Follow this procedure to clean the platen glass and under surface of the feeder or the platen glass cover.

1 Turn OFF the power switch and disconnect the power cord.

2 Open the feeder or the platen glass cover.

3 Clean the platen glass and the under surface of the feeder or the platen glass cover.

(1) Clean the areas with a cloth dampened with water.
(2) Wipe the areas with a soft, dry cloth.

4 Close the feeder or the platen glass cover.

5 Connect the power cord and turn ON the power switch.

Cleaning the Feeder Automatically

If your document has black streaks or appears dirty after it has been scanned from the feeder, the rollers inside the feeder may be dirty. Clean the roller using blank paper.

Keys to be used for this operation

Menu

▲▼OK

1 Press [⊛] (Menu).

2 Select <Adjustment/Maintenance> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Menu
 Scan Settings
 USB Direct Print Se…
 Printer Settings
 Adjustment/Maintenan
```

3 Select <Clean Feeder> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Adjustment/Maintenance
 Special Processing
 Clean Fixing Unit
 Clean ITB
 Clean Feeder
```

4 Load 10 sheets of A4 or Letter size plain paper in the feeder, and then press [OK].

The cleaning begins. It takes approximately 65 seconds to complete the process.

```
Clean Feeder
Load 10 sheets of A4
or LTR in feeder.
 Start
```

5 Press [⊛] (Menu) to close the menu screen.

Precautions When Cleaning the Machine

Before cleaning the machine, note the following.
- Make sure that no jobs are stored in memory before turning OFF the power switch and disconnecting the power cord.
- Use a soft cloth to avoid scratching the components.
- Do not clean the machine components with tissue paper, paper towels, or similar materials. These materials tend to stick to the components or generate static charges.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use volatile liquids such as thinner, benzene, acetone, or any other chemical cleaner to clean the machine. These can damage the machine components.

Precautions to take when cleaning the feeder or the platen glass cover

Do not dampen the cloth too much, as this may tear the document or damage the machine.

Precautions to take when closing the feeder or the platen glass cover

Be careful not to get your fingers caught.

Precautions to take when you get toner onto your hands or into clothing

If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water.
The toner sets onto hands or into clothing if you try to wash it with warm water. Once it is set, you can hardly remove the toner stains.

🔋 NOTE

About sending or receiving faxes

When the power plug is unplugged, the machine cannot send or receive faxes.

When a job is waiting to be printed

The job is deleted when you turn OFF the power switch.

About jobs stored in memory

Jobs can be stored in memory for approximately five minutes after the power plug has been unplugged. To view jobs stored in memory, see the following.

● Replacing Toner Cartridges

This section describes the procedure for replacing toner cartridges.

Toner cartridges are consumables. When the toner becomes nearly empty or has run out completely in the middle of a job run, a message appears on the screen, or the following problems may occur. Take the appropriate action accordingly.

● **A message appears on the screen**
  ▶ "When a Message Appears" (→P.8-5)

● **White streaks appear on the output, or the output is partially faded.**
  ▶ "When White Streaks Appear on the Output or the Output Is Partially Faded" (→P.8-5)

✋ **IMPORTANT** ——————————————
  About toner cartridges
  For more information on toner cartridges, see the following sections.
  ▶ "About the Supplied Toner Cartridge" (→P.8-5)
  ▶ "About Replacement Toner Cartridges" (→P.8-6)
  ▶ "Handling Toner Cartridges" (→P.8-6)
  ▶ "Storing Toner Cartridges" (→P.8-7)
  ▶ "Checking the Toner Level" (→P.8-7)
  ▶ "Purchasing Consumables" (→P.8-6)
  * The average yield of replacement toner cartridges varies from that of the supplied toner cartridge.

When a Message Appears

When the toner becomes nearly empty in the middle of a job run, a message appears on the screen.

Message	When it is displayed	Description and solutions
Prepare <Toner Color>* toner cartridge	When a toner cartridge soon needs to be replaced.	Have ready a replacement toner cartridge. It is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge before printing a large amount of data.
Cart. parts life end. <Toner Color>* replcmnt. recmnd.	Toner cartridges with print quality that cannot be guaranteed due to their decreasing lifetime etc., or used toner cartridges that have reached their lifetime, may have been inserted.	It is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge. You can continue printing by setting <Continue Printing (Qlty. Not Guaranteed)>, but these cartridges may cause malfunctions.

* Black, yellow, magenta, or cyan will appear in <Toner Color>.

✋ **IMPORTANT** ——————————————
  When white streaks appear on the output, or the output is partially faded
  When white streaks appear on the output or the output is partially faded, the toner cartridge has almost reached the end of its life, even if no message appears on the screen. When the print quality becomes unacceptable, see the following to fix the problem.
  ▶ "When White Streaks Appear on the Output or the Output Is Partially Faded" (→P.8-5)

When White Streaks Appear on the Output or the Output Is Partially Faded

When the toner nearly runs out, white streaks appear on the output, or the output is partially faded.

* No message appears on the screen, if the toner nearly runs out. Replace the toner cartridge when white streaks appear on the output, or the output is partially faded.
* Do not perform <Full Adjustment>, <Quick Adjustment>, or <Copy Image Adjustment> in such situations above. Even you try to adjust using this function, the condition may not be improved.
  ▶ "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" (→P.8-7)

About the Supplied Toner Cartridge

The average yield of the toner cartridge that comes with the machine is as follows.

MF8380Cdw

Canon Cartridge 118 Black Starter	Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge*1*2: 1,200 sheets
Canon Cartridge 118 Yellow Starter **Canon Cartridge 118 Magenta Starter** **Canon Cartridge 118 Cyan Starter**	Average yield of Composite Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), and C (Cyan) toner cartridges*1*2: 1,400 sheets

MF8080Cw

Canon Cartridge 116 Black Starter	Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge*1*2: 800 sheets
Canon Cartridge 116 Yellow Starter **Canon Cartridge 116 Magenta Starter** **Canon Cartridge 116 Cyan Starter**	Average yield of Composite Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), and C (Cyan) toner cartridges*1*2: 800 sheets

1 The average yield is on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19798" when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.
  * "ISO/IEC 19798" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for color printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization).
*2 The life of the toner cartridges is affected by the following conditions.

Maintenance

8-5

Printing environment/ conditions	Spaced printing Paper size and paper type settings
Printing ratio	Toner is used even when printing with a low printing ratio.
Color printing	Multiple color toner cartridges may reach the end of their life at the same time.
The machine configuration	Black and white printing may affect the life of the color toner cartridges.

About Replacement Toner Cartridges

Purchase the toner cartridges at your local authorized Canon dealer.
Replace the toner cartridges according to the description in the following charts. However, you may need to replace the toner cartridge earlier than the described life time depending on installation environment of the machine, the printing paper size, or the document type.

MF8380Cdw

Toner cartridges	Target for replacing toner cartridges
Canon Cartridge 118 Black	Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge *1*2 : 3,400 sheets
Canon Cartridge 118 Yellow Canon Cartridge 118 Magenta Canon Cartridge 118 Cyan	Average yield of Composite Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), and C (Cyan) toner cartridges *1*2 : 2,900 sheets

MF8080Cw

Toner cartridges	Target for replacing toner cartridges
Canon Cartridge 116 Black	Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge *1*2 : 2,300 sheets
Canon Cartridge 116 Yellow Canon Cartridge 116 Magenta Canon Cartridge 116 Cyan	Average yield of Composite Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), and C (Cyan) toner cartridges *1*2 : 1,500 sheets

1 The average yield is on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19798" when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.
  * "ISO/IEC 19798" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for color printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization).
*2 The life of the toner cartridges is affected by the following conditions.

Printing environment/ conditions	Spaced printing Paper size and paper type settings
Printing ratio	Toner is used even when printing with a low printing ratio.
Color printing	Multiple color toner cartridges may reach the end of their life at the same time.
The machine configuration	Black and white printing may affect the life of the color toner cartridges.

🖐 **IMPORTANT** ———

About Replacement Toner Cartridges
For optimum print quality, replacement is recommended using genuine Canon toner cartridges.

Model name	Supported Canon genuine toner cartridge
MF8380Cdw	Canon Cartridge 118 Yellow Canon Cartridge 118 Magenta Canon Cartridge 118 Cyan Canon Cartridge 118 Black
MF8080Cw	Canon Cartridge 116 Yellow Canon Cartridge 116 Magenta Canon Cartridge 116 Cyan Canon Cartridge 116 Black

Purchasing Consumables

To purchase replacement toner cartridges, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
To find a dealer near, contact the Canon help line.

Handling Toner Cartridges

Note the following when handling the toner cartridge.

⚠ **WARNING**

Do not place the toner cartridge in fire.
This may cause toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite and result in burns.

⚠ **CAUTION**

If toner leaks from the toner cartridge
Be careful not to inhale the toner or allow it to come into direct contact with your skin. If the toner comes into contact with your skin, wash with soap. If the skin becomes irritated or you inhale the toner, consult a physician immediately.

When removing a toner cartridge
Make sure to remove it carefully. If not removed with care, the toner powder may scatter and come in contact with your eyes and mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

Keep the toner cartridge away from small children.
If the toner or other parts are ingested, consult a physician immediately.

Do not disassemble the toner cartridge.
The toner may scatter and get into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

🖐 **IMPORTANT** ———
Handling toner cartridges
- Avoid locations subject to high temperature, high humidity, or rapid changes in temperature.
- Do not expose the toner cartridge to direct sunlight or bright light for more than five minutes.
- Store the toner cartridge in its protective bag. Do not open the bag until you are ready to install the toner cartridge in the machine.
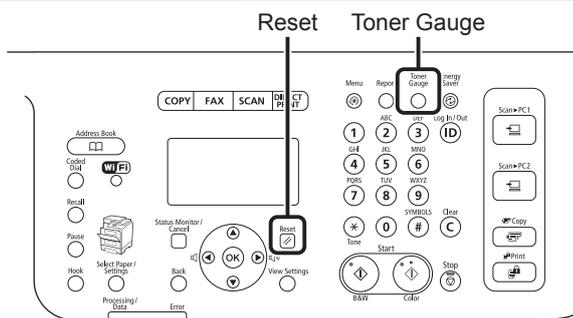
Maintenance

- Keep the protective bag for the toner cartridge. They are required when transporting the machine such as during relocation.
- Do not store the toner cartridge in a salty atmosphere or where there are corrosive gases such as from aerosol sprays.
- Do not remove the toner cartridge from the machine unnecessarily.
- Print quality may deteriorate if the drum surface is exposed to light or is damaged.
- Always hold the toner cartridge by its handle to avoid touching the drum.
- Do not place the toner cartridge in an upright or an upside down position. If the toner is kept upright or upside down, the toner will solidify and may not return to its original condition even if it is shaken.
- When disposing of a used toner cartridge, place the toner container into its protective bag to prevent the toner from scattering, and then dispose of the toner cartridge according to local regulations.

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges

Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace.

Use of counterfeit toner cartridges may result in poor print quality or machine performance.

Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.
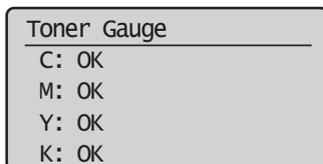
For more information, see http://www.canon.com/counterfeit.

Checking the Toner Level

Keys to be used for this operation

Reset   Toner Gauge

1   Press [◯] (Toner Gauge).

The toner level is displayed.

```
Toner Gauge
  C: OK
  M: OK
  Y: OK
  K: OK
```

NOTE

Displaying the toner level

The toner level is displayed in three stages.
- <OK>
- <Low>
  The message <Prepare <Toner Color>* toner cartridge.> appears in the display.
- <Nearly Out>
  The message <End of <Toner Color>* toner cartridge lifetime.> or <Cannot guarantee qlty. <Toner Color>* replcmnt. recmnd.> appears in the display.

  * When <OK>, <Low> or <Nearly Out> is displayed, the message <Cart. parts life end. <Toner Color>* replcmnt. recmnd.> may appear in the display.

* Black, yellow, magenta, or cyan will appear in <Toner Color>. (More than one color may appear.)
  For details on the solution, see "Troubleshooting" in the e-Manual.

2   Press [⫽] (Reset) to return to standby mode.

Storing Toner Cartridges

Be aware of the following points when storing a new toner cartridge or handling the toner cartridge that was taken out of the machine for maintenance or relocating the machine somewhere.

IMPORTANT

Precautions when storing toner cartridges

To use toner cartridges in a safe and trouble-free manner, store them in a place that fulfills the following conditions.
- Do not store toner cartridges in a location exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not store toner cartridges in a location subject to high temperature or humidity or in a location with dramatic changes in temperature or humidity.
  - Storage temperature range: 32 to 95°F (0 to 35°C)
  - Storage humidity range: 35 to 85% RH (no condensation)
- Do not store toner cartridges in a place where corrosive gases, such as ammonia, are generated, or where a considerable amount of salt is contained in the air, or where there is a lot of dust.
- Keep toner cartridges out of the reach of small children.

Store toner cartridges in the same orientation as when they are installed in the machine.

Do not store toner cartridges vertically or upside-down.

When removing the toner cartridge which is being used from the machine

Immediately place the removed toner cartridge into the original protective bag or wrap it with a thick cloth.

About a new toner cartridge

Do not take a new toner cartridge out of the protective bag until it is ready to be used.

NOTE

About condensation

Even within the storable humidity range, water droplets may develop both inside and outside toner cartridges. The formation of water droplets is called condensation.

Condensation will adversely affect the quality of toner cartridges.

Replacing the Toner Cartridges

Before replacing toner cartridges, see "Precautions when Replacing Toner Cartridge" (→P.8-9).
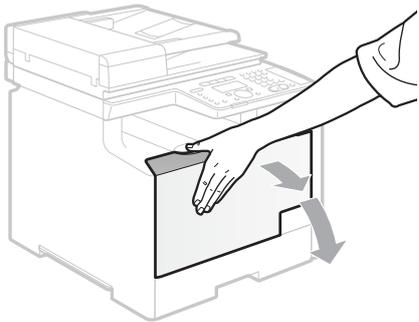
NOTE

Checking the toner cartridge status for each color

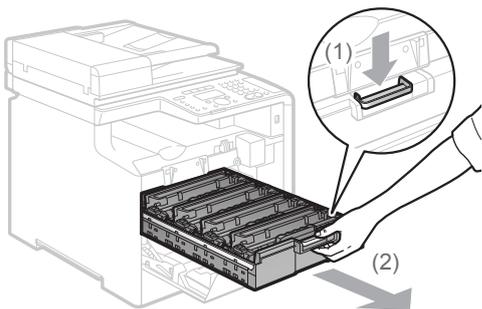You can check the status of the toner cartridges for each color on the operation panel.

▶ "Checking the Toner Level" (→P.8-7)

Maintenance

1 Open the front cover.

2 Press the lever and pull out the toner cartridge tray.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

3 Hold the toner cartridge to be replaced by its handle and pull it straight up and out of the machine.

4 Take out the new toner cartridge from the protective bag.

You can open the protective bag with your hands from the notch.
* Keep the protective bag. You will need them when you remove the toner cartridge for machine maintenance or other purposes.

5 Shake the toner cartridge 5 or 6 times as shown in the figure to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge.

Do not remove the drum protective cover (A).

6 Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface.

7 Remove the tab, and the pull out the sealing tape (approx. 19 3/4" (50 cm) long).

👆 IMPORTANT

When pulling out the sealing tape
• Do not pull the sealing tape diagonally or sideways. If the tape breaks, this may become difficult to pull out completely.

• Even if the sealing tape stops at midpoint, pull it out of the toner cartridge completely.
• If any tape remains in the toner cartridge, this may result in poor print quality. If you are using the Fax, please note that you can only print the received data once, because the received data is deleted once it is printed.

Disposing of the removed sealing tape
Dispose of the sealing tape according to local regulations.

Maintenance

8 Remove the drum protective cover (A).

* Keep the drum protective cover. You will need them when you remove the toner cartridge for machine maintenance or other purposes.

(A)

9 Install the toner cartridge.

Be careful not to let the drum impact the frame of the toner cartridge tray.

10 Push the toner cartridge tray back in.

11 Close the front cover.

If you cannot close the front cover

Make sure that the toner cartridge tray is closed.
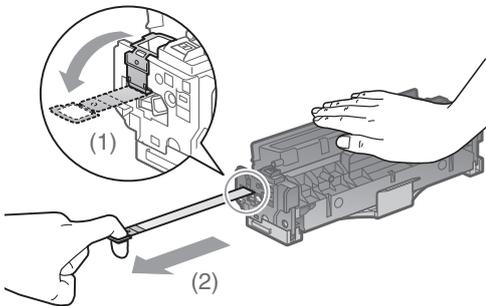Do not try to forcefully close the front cover, as this may damage the machine.

Precautions when Replacing Toner Cartridge

See "Maintenance and Inspections" (→P.xviii) in "Important Safety Instructions" as well.

⚠ WARNING

Do not dispose of a used toner cartridge in an open flame.

This may ignite the toner remaining inside the cartridge, resulting in burns or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Precautions if you get toner on your hands or clothing

If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water.

Washing with warm water sets the toner, making it impossible to remove the toner stains

Be careful not to scatter the toner.

Do not pull out the sealing tape forcefully or stop pulling the tape halfway, as this may cause toner to spill out.

If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

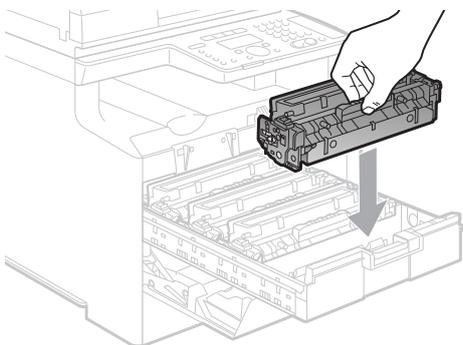**Precautions when closing the front cover**

Be careful not to catch your fingers.

ⓘ IMPORTANT

About replacement toner cartridges

For optimum print quality, replacement is recommended using genuine Canon toner cartridges.

Model name	Supported Canon genuine toner cartridge
MF8380Cdw	Canon Cartridge 118 Yellow Canon Cartridge 118 Magenta Canon Cartridge 118 Cyan Canon Cartridge 118 Black
MF8080Cw	Canon Cartridge 116 Yellow Canon Cartridge 116 Magenta Canon Cartridge 116 Cyan Canon Cartridge 116 Black

Be Careful of Counterfeit Toner Cartridges

Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace.
Use of counterfeit toner cartridges may result in poor print quality or machine performance.
Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridges.
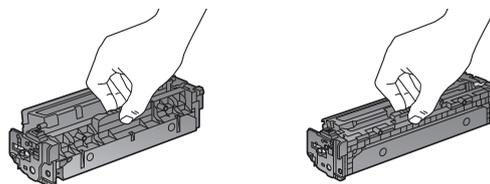For more information, see the following website.
http://www.canon.com/counterfeit

Shake the toner cartridge before setting

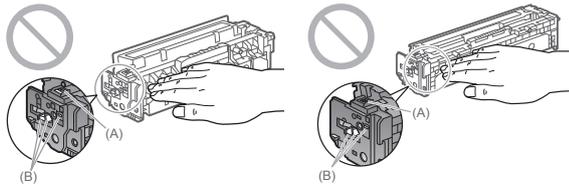If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in a deterioration in print quality.

Hold the toner cartridges properly

When handling the toner cartridges, hold them properly as shown in the figure. Do not place them vertically or upside-down.
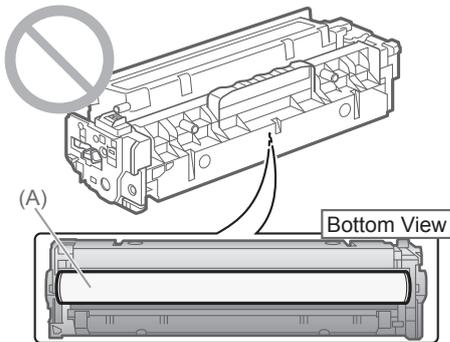
Do not touch the toner cartridge memory (A) or the electrical contacts (B)

This may result in damage to the cartridge.

Do not touch the drum (A).

Print quality may deteriorate if you touch or damage the drum (A) at the bottom of the toner cartridge.

(A)

Bottom View

Do not touch the high-voltage contacts (A)

This may result in damage to the machine.

(A)   (A)

Precautions when installing toner cartridges

The position of the toner cartridges in the printer is determined by the toner color. Install the toner cartridges in the slots that have labels of the same color.

Do not leave the front cover open for a long time with the toner cartridges installed.

This may result in a deterioration in print quality.

After replacing toner cartridges

To maintain image quality, it is recommended to perform automatic gradation adjustment.

☞ e-Manual → Maintenance → Adjusting → Correcting the Gradation → Making Full Adjustment

Miscellaneous precautions

- Do not expose the toner cartridge to direct sunlight or strong light.
- Never disassemble or modify it.
- Condensation may form in and on the toner cartridge if it is brought into an environment that exposes it to sudden changes in temperature and/or humidity. If you move the toner cartridge to a location that is warmer or has higher humidity, leave the cartridge in the new location for two hours or longer without opening the protective bag to allow it to adjust to the new temperature.

NOTE -

About the packing materials

The packing materials may be changed in form or placement, or may be added or removed without notice.

If <Continue Printing When Toner Is Low> is set to <On>

You can keep printing fax documents or reports without replacing a toner cartridge. However, the printed documents may be light or blurred because of lack of toner. The data is erased when the documents are printed out, so you cannot print the same documents again.

▶ "Continue Printing When Toner Is Low" (→P.6-27)

Collecting used toner cartridges

▶ "Recycling Used Cartridges" (→P.8-11)

- -

Recycling Used Cartridges

Canon has instituted a worldwide recycling program for cartridges called "The Clean Earth Campaign". This program preserves precious natural resources by utilizing a variety of materials found in the used cartridges
that are of no further use, to remanufacture new cartridges which, at the same time, keeps the environment cleaner by reducing landfill waste.
Complete details concerning this program are enclosed in each Cartridge box.

The Clean Earth Campaign

● **THE Canon CARTRIDGE RECYCLING PROGRAM**
The Canon Cartridge Recycling Program fulfills the first initiative of Canon's Clean Earth Campaign, which supports four critical environmental areas:

- Recycling in the Workplace
- Conserving Environmental Resources
- Scientific Research and Education
- Encouraging Outdoors Appreciation

The remaining "Clean Earth" initiatives are supported in the U.S. through sponsorships of the National Park Foundation, the National Wildlife Federation, and The Nature Conservancy and in Canada through donations to the World Wildlife Fund Canada and The Nature Conservancy of Canada.

Since its inception, The Canon Cartridge Recycling Program has collected huge amount of cartridges that otherwise would have been discarded into landfills or similar facilities.
Instead, this rapidly growing program returns used cartridges to the manufacturing process, thus conserving an array of resources.
Becoming a part of this worthwhile program is easy. When your cartridge is of no further use, simply follow the instructions detailed for U.S. or Canadian residents.
We appreciate your support of The Canon Cartridge Recycling Program.
Working together we can make a significant contribution to a cleaner planet.

- Cartridges collected through this program are not refilled.
- You are not entitled to a tax deduction or rebate for the return of empty cartridges.
- This program may be modified or discontinued without notice.

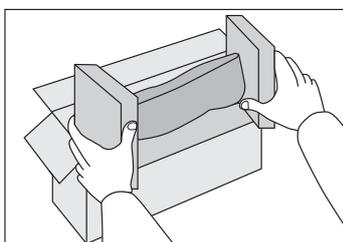The Clean Earth Campaign
Supporting Environmental Initiatives With

U.S.A. PROGRAM

Packaging

● **Option A-1: Single Box Return**
- Repackage the empty cartridge utilizing the wrapper and pulp mould end-blocks from the new cartridge's box.
- Place the empty cartridge in the box of your new cartridge. Seal the box.

Maintenance

● Option B: Volume Box Return

We encourage you to use this option as a more efficient way to ship cartridges.
- Place as many cartridges as possible into one box.
  Carefully seal the box with tape;
    or
- Call **1-800-OK-Canon** to receive your free eight cartridge collection box.

● Option A-2: Multiple Box Return

We encourage you to use this option as a more efficient way to ship cartridges.
- Complete Option A-1.
- Bundle multiple cartridge boxes together securely with tape.

Please be sure that the shipment does not exceed UPS specifications.
Maximum weight = 70 lb. (31.8 kg)
Maximum length = 108" (2,743 mm)
Maximum girth (length + 2 x width + 2 x height) = 130" (3,302 mm)
If your shipment exceeds the above limits, please call 1-800-OK-Canon for special shipping information.

> Please Note:
> **Do not send** defective cartridges for replacement.
> Defective cartridges under warranty should be exchanged by an authorized dealer or service facility as provided in the warranty.

Shipping

Apply the UPS authorized returning label provided in this guide.
Residents of Alaska and Hawaii: Do not use the UPS authorized returning label. For Alaska and Hawaii Canon set up alternative mail service with the U.S. Postal Service.
Please call 1-800-OK-Canon to receive U.S. Postal Service merchandise returning label.
- Give the shipment to your UPS driver when you receive your next regular delivery; (UPS may charge a fee for customers who call UPS to pick up a cartridge shipment if they do not already have a delivery scheduled.)
    or
- Take the shipment to your local UPS receiving point.

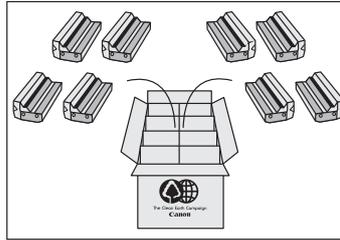## CANADA PROGRAM-CANADA PROGRAMME

● **Option A: Single Box Return**

• Repackage the empty cartridge utilizing the wrapper and pulp mould end-blocks from the new cartridge's box.

• Place the empty cartridge in the box of your new cartridge. Seal the box.

• Apply the Canon Canada Inc./Canada Post label provided in this brochure. Canon's labels are specially marked so that Canon pays the postage.

• Deposit your empty cartridge in any full size street mailbox or take it to your local Canada Post outlet or franchise.

● **Option B: Volume Box Return (eight or more cartridges)**

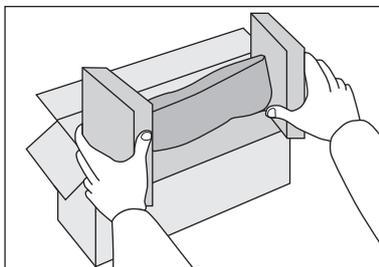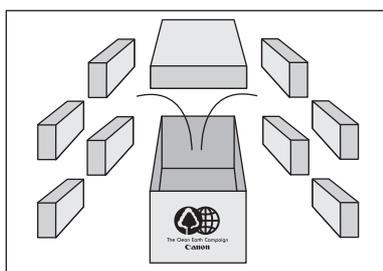We encourage you to use this option as a more efficient way to ship cartridges.

• Call **1-800-667-2666** to receive your free Canon collection box kit.

• The collection box can accommodate eight individual cartridge boxes.

• Place your eight individually packaged boxes of empty cartridges into the Canon collection box. Seal the box.

• Apply the Canon Canada Inc./Canada Post label provided in this brochure.

• Canon's labels are specially marked so that Canon pays the postage.

• Deliver to any local Canada Post outlet or franchise. Customers who hold a Commercial pick-up agreement with Canada Post may have their collection box picked up.

Working to preserve endangered species is a long-standing Canon interest.

To this end, for every cartridge collected, Canon Canada donates $1, shared equally between World Wildlife Fund Canada and the Nature Conservancy of Canada. This donation is utilized in Canada.

• For further information about The Clean Earth Campaign in Canada, please call or write to Canon.
1-800-667-2666
Canon Canada Inc.
Corporate Customer Relations
6390 Dixie Road
Mississauga, ON L5T 1P7

Relocating the Machine

Before transporting the machine, see "Precautions when Relocating the Machine" (→P.8-15).

When changing the location of the machine or moving the machine for maintenance, be sure to perform the following procedure.

1 Turn the power OFF, then disconnect the cables and cord from the machine.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

How to remove the cables and cord

USB cable*	(2) Turn the computer off. (3) Remove it from the machine.
LAN cable*	(4) Remove it from the machine.
Telephone cable*	(5) Unplug the external telephone cable from the external device jack. (6) Unplug the telephone line cable from the telephone line jack.
Power cord	(7) Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet. (8) Remove it from the machine.

* Whether the cable is connected or not varies depending on your environment.

2 Pull out the paper cassette.

Hold the paper cassette with both hands.

● **MF8380Cdw**

● **MF8080Cw**

3 Move the machine from the installation site.

Hold the grips with two or more people.
Check the weight of the machine so it can be carried safely.
▶ "Main Specifications" (→P.11-2)

● **MF8380Cdw**

Maintenance

● **MF8080Cw**

4 Put the machine down carefully at the new installation site.

🖊 **NOTE** -

Installation Procedures

    See the Starter Guide that came with the machine.

- -

When transporting the machine long distance

To prevent damage to the machine during transport, perform the following.

- Remove the toner cartridges
  * See also "Storing Toner Cartridges" (→P.8-7).
- Securely pack the printer in the original box with packing materials
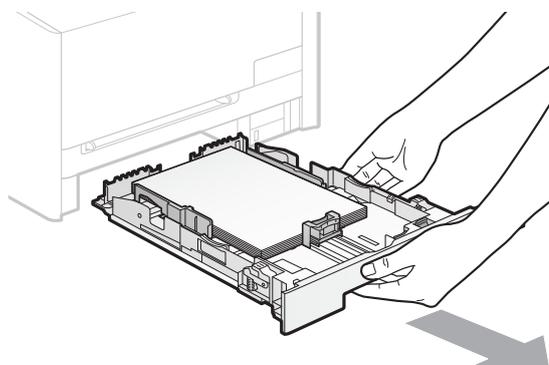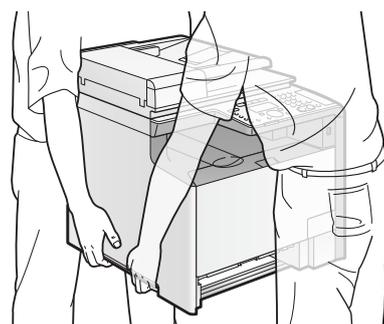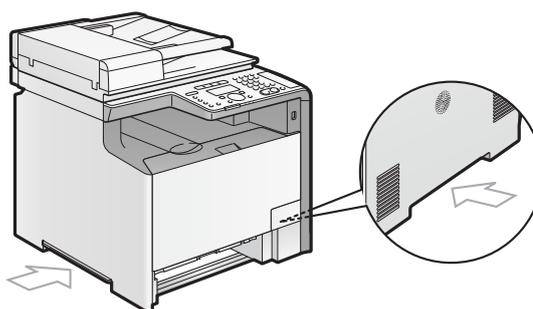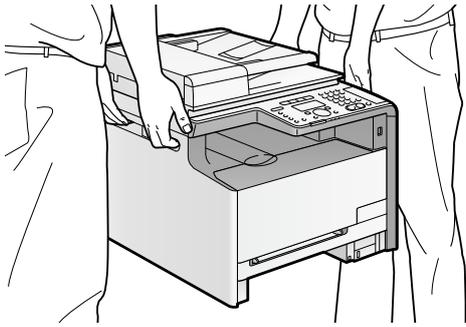 * If the original box and packing materials are not available, find an appropriate box along with packing materials and pack the machine and the parts appropriately.

⚠️ **WARNING**

When transporting the machine

Be sure to turn off the power switches of the machine and your computer, and then unplug the power plug and interface cables.

Failure to do so can damage the cables or cords, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Do not carry the machine with the paper cassette installed

If you do so, the paper cassette may drop, resulting in personal injury.

Do not carry the machine with the optional paper cassette (Cassette 2) installed (MF8380Cdw Only)

If you do so, the optional paper cassette (Cassette 2) may drop resulting in personal injury

Put the machine down slowly and carefully

Be careful not to hurt your hands or fingers.

🖐 **IMPORTANT** -

Do not carry the machine with a cover or tray open.

    Make sure that the front cover and multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) are closed before carrying the printer.

Maintenance

Chapter | **9**

Troubleshooting

This section describes solutions for cases such as paper jam and when problems are not solved.

Clearing Jams

▶

When <Paper jam.> appears on the screen, a paper jam has occurred in the feeder or somewhere inside the machine. To remove the jammed document or paper, follow the onscreen instructions.

▷ "Document Jams in the Feeder" (→P.9-2)
▷ "Paper Jams in the Rear Cover and Duplex Unit (MF8380Cdw Only)" (→P.9-3)
▷ "Paper Jams in the Output Area (MF8380Cdw Only)" (→P.9-4)
▷ "Paper Jams in the Output Area and Rear Cover (MF8080Cw Only)" (→P.9-5)
▷ "Paper Jams in the Paper Cassette (Cassette 1 or 2)" (→P.9-5)
▷ "Paper Jams in the Multi-purpose Tray (MF8380Cdw Only)" (→P.9-6)
▷ "Paper Jams in the Manual Feed Slot (MF8080Cw Only)" (→P.9-7)

IMPORTANT

Perform the operation while the machine is still ON

If it is turned OFF, the data that is printing will be erased.

If the jammed paper is torn

Remove all torn pieces of paper to avoid further jams.

If paper jams occur repeatedly

Check the following.

- Fan the paper stack and tap the edge on a flat surface to align the paper before loading it into the machine.
- Make sure that the paper you are using meets the requirements for use.
  ▷ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)
- Make sure that you have removed all scraps of paper from the inside of the machine.

NOTE

Do not force the jammed document or paper out of the machine.

Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line for assistance, if needed.

Document Jams in the Feeder

Follow onscreen instructions as well as the ones provided in this section to remove jammed documents.

1 **Press [▶].**

```
⚠ Paper jam.
Press [▶] to
display steps.        ▶
```

2 **Remove the document loaded in the feeder.**

3 **Open the feeder cover.**

For MF8080Cw, proceed to step 5.

4 **Move the release lever (A) to the position shown in the figure. (MF8380Cdw Only)**

5 **Remove the jammed document by pulling it gently.**

For MF8080Cw, proceed to step 8.

Troubleshooting

6 Open the inner cover by holding the green tab (A). (MF8380Cdw Only)

7 Remove the jammed document by pulling it gently. (MF8380Cdw Only)

8 Close inner cover.

9 Close the feeder cover.

Paper Jams in the Rear Cover and Duplex Unit (MF8380Cdw Only)

Referring to the procedure on the display, follow the steps below to remove jammed paper.

Keys to be used for this operation

1 Press [▶].

```
⅋ Paper jam.
Press [▶] to
display steps.       ▶
```

2 Open the rear cover.

3 Open the paper output guide by holding the green tab (A).

4 Remove the paper by pulling it gently.

Make sure that no paper is jammed inside the paper output guide, and then close it.

5 **Remove the paper by pulling it gently.**

6 **Holding the green tabs (A) on both sides, close the duplex unit.**

Close the guide firmly until it clicks.

7 **Remove the paper by pulling it gently.**

8 **Close the rear cover.**

The machine is ready to print.

Paper Jams in the Output Area (MF8380Cdw Only)

Referring to the procedure on the display, follow the steps below to remove jammed paper.

Keys to be used for this operation

1 **Press [▶].**

```
⚡ Paper jam.
Press [▶] to
display steps.          ▶
```

2 **Open the front cover.**

3 **Lift the scanning platform.**

4 **Remove the paper by pulling it gently.**

5 **Lower the scanning platform.**

6 **Close the front cover.**

The machine is ready to print.

Paper Jams in the Output Area and Rear Cover (MF8080Cw Only)

Referring to the procedure on the display, follow the steps below to remove jammed paper.

Keys to be used for this operation

1 Press [▶].

```
⊗ᴠ Paper jam.
Press [▶] to
display steps.        ▶
```

2 Lift the scanning platform.

3 Remove the paper by pulling it gently.

4 Lower the scanning platform.

5 Open the rear cover.

6 Remove the paper by pulling it gently.

7 Close the rear cover.

The machine is ready to print.

Paper Jams in the Paper Cassette (Cassette 1 or 2)

Referring to the procedure on the display, follow the steps below to remove jammed paper.

* Cassette 2 (optional) can be used only for MF8380Cdw.

Keys to be used for this operation

▶OK

1 Press [▶].

Press [OK] to exit the operation screen.

```
⊗ᴠ Paper jam.
Press [▶] to
display steps.        ▶
(End: Press OK)
```

2 Pull out the paper cassette.

Hold the paper cassette with both hands.

If the optional paper cassette (Cassette 2) is installed in MF8380Cdw, pull out the optional paper cassette also.

3 Remove the paper by pulling it gently.

4 Insert the paper cassette into the machine.

If the optional paper cassette (Cassette 2) is installed in MF8380Cdw, close the optional paper cassette also.

5 When the following screen appears, select <Yes> with [◀], and then press [OK].

The machine is ready to print.

```
Is all of the jammed
paper removed?

    Yes      No
```

Paper Jams in the Multi-purpose Tray (MF8380Cdw Only)

Referring to the procedure on the display, follow the steps below to remove jammed paper.

Keys to be used for this operation

▶OK

1 Press [▶].

Press [OK] to exit the operation screen.

```
⏦ Paper jam.
Press [▶] to
display steps.        ▶
(End: Press OK)
```

2 Remove the paper by pulling it gently.

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily
Do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to Step 3.

3 Close the multi-purpose tray.

4 Pull out the paper cassette.

Hold the paper cassette with both hands.

5 Lower the manual feed transport guide.

(1) Hold the green tabs (A) on both sides.
(2) Push them down.

(A)

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the rubber pad (A)

Touching it may result in deterioration in print quality.

(A)

6 Remove the paper by pulling it gently.

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily
Do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to Step 7.

7 Holding the green tabs (A) on both sides, return the manual feed transport guide to its original position.

Push them up until it clicks.

(A)

8 Insert the paper cassette into the machine.

9 When the following screen appears, select <Yes> with [◀], and then press [OK].

The machine is ready to print.

```
Is all of the jammed
paper removed?

   Yes     No
```

NOTE

If the jammed paper cannot be removed in Step 6
See "Paper Jams in the Rear Cover and Duplex Unit (MF8380Cdw Only)" (→P.9-3) and remove the paper.

Paper Jams in the Manual Feed Slot (MF8080Cw Only)

Referring to the procedure on the display, follow the steps below to remove jammed paper.

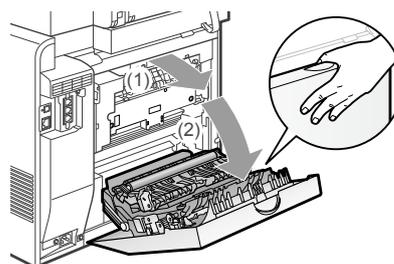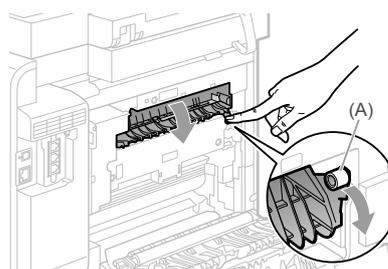Keys to be used for this operation
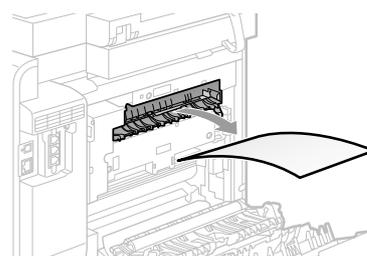

▶OK

1 Press [▶].

Press [OK] to exit the operation screen.

```
⚡ Paper jam.
Press [▶] to
display steps.        ▶
(End: Press OK)
```

2 Pull out the paper cassette.

Hold the paper cassette with both hands.

3 Open the manual feed slot cover.

4 Lower the manual feed transport guide.

(1) Hold the green tabs (A) on both sides.
(2) Push them down.

(A)

Troubleshooting

5 Remove the paper by pulling it gently.

6 Holding the green tabs (A) on both sides, return the manual feed transport guide to its original position.

Push them up until it clicks.

(A)

7 Close the manual feed slot cover.

8 Insert the paper cassette into the machine.

9 When the following screen appears, select <Yes> with [◀], and then press [OK].

The machine is ready to print.

```
Is all of the jammed
paper removed?

   Yes        No
```

⬤ Onscreen Message

If messages appear, see the following and solve the problem.
☞ e-Manual → Troubleshooting → Onscreen Messages

⬤ Error Codes

An error code is a 3-digit code recorded in the error log when an error occurs.
You can view the code in the following reports and log:

Error codes	• Error send report • Error receive report • Job history displayed on the system status screen

```
01/01/2011 02:07 PM FAX    123XXXXXXX        CANON                    P.0001

                    * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
                    * * *   Error Report (Send)   * * *
                    * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *

                            Send job resulted in error.


                 Job No.              0123
                 Address              0123456789
                 Name                 name
                 Start Time           01/01 02:07 AM
                 Call Length          01'15
                 Sheets               1
                 Result               NG
                                      #018    Busy/No Signal
```

Error code

For more information on the reports, refer to the following.
☞ e-Manual → Basic Operation → Printing the Report Automatically

For details on the error code, see the following.

#001	Problem	A document jam has occurred.
	Action	Remove the jammed document.
#003	Problem	The machine is taking considerable time to send high-volume data.
	Action 1	Reduce the scan resolution and try to send the document again.
	Action 2	Reduce the scan resolution or ask the sender to split the document into smaller subsets and send one subset at a time.
#005	Problem 1	The receiving fax machine did not respond within 35 seconds.
	Action	Repeat the sending procedure from the beginning. Additionally, ask the recipient to check the fax machine. When making an overseas call, add a pause to the fax number.
	Problem 2	The receiving fax machine may not be a G3 fax machine.
	Action	Make sure the receiving fax machine is a G3 fax machine. If it is a G3 fax machine, send the document again. Otherwise, switch to the communication mode supported by the receiving fax machine and send the document again.
#012	Problem	The receiving fax machine is out of paper.
	Action	Make sure that there is enough paper loaded in the receiving fax machine's paper tray.
#018	Problem 1	No response is obtained after redialing the number. The line may be busy or disconnected.
	Action	Wait a few seconds before trying to dial the number again. Make sure that the receiving fax machine is ready to receive a document if you still cannot send a fax. Wait a few more seconds before trying to dial the number again if the line is still busy.
	Problem 2	You cannot send a fax because the line is busy or disconnected.
	Action	Make sure that the receiving fax machine is ready to receive a document and try to dial the number again.
	Problem 3	The settings configured on the receiving fax machine may not be the same with your fax machine.
	Action	Make sure that the receiving fax machine is ready to receive a document and try to dial the number again.
	Problem 4	No pause was added to the fax number when sending a fax overseas.
	Action	Add a pause after the country code or in front of the fax number and dial the number again. When sending a fax to a destination registered in the address book, switch to the overseas transmission mode on the detailed setup screen.

Troubleshooting

#022	Problem 1	You are restricted to send faxes from your computer.
	Action	You need to disable the restriction. Contact your administrator for more information. ☞ e-Manual → Security → Restricting to Specify Destinations and Use the Sending Functions → Restricting to Send Faxes from Your Computer
	Problem 2	Forwarding was not successful because the destination specified to forward faxes had been deleted.
	Action	Register the destination to forward faxes again and check the settings for forwarding fax documents. ☞ e-Manual → Basic Operation → Registering Destinations in the Address Book ☞ e-Manual → Fax → Using the Fax Functions → Receiving faxes → Forwarding Fax Documents
#037	Problem 1	The machine memory is full.
	Action	Print, send, or delete any documents stored in memory.
	Problem 2	The data size exceeds the machine's memory capacity.
	Action	Reduce the data resolution or change the file format to reduce the data size.
	Problem 3	The memory is full when using the secure printing.
	Action	Print the documents in several batches or send the job without using the secure printing. ☞ e-Manual → Security → Entering PIN for Printing (Secure Printing) → Setting Secure Printing
#054	Problem 1	An abbreviation of the sender's name or sender's fax number is not registered when the sender sends a fax from a computer.
	Action	Register an abbreviation of the sender's name as well as the sender's fax number.
	Problem 2	The destination number is more than 40 digits long when sending a fax from a computer or importing from the address book.
	Action	Reduce the number of digits to less than 40.
#099	Problem	A job currently being processed has been canceled manually.
	Action	Try to send or receive the document again.
#408	Problem 1	The memory media was disconnected while it was being written to, and writing failed.
	Action	Check to see if the memory media was disconnected, and try writing again.
	Problem 2	An error occurs when transferring images to memory media, and images cannot be transferred normally.
	Action	Check the memory media status, and then repeat the operation.
	Problem 3	The connected memory media is formatted with an unsupported file system.
	Action	Make sure that the memory media is formatted with a file system that is supported by the machine (FAT16 or FAT32).
#701	Problem 1	Failed the authentication of ID or PIN in the Department ID Management.
	Action	Specify the correct dept. ID or PIN and redo the authentication.
	Problem 2	The jobs with unknown IDs are restricted.
	Action	Need to deactivate the restriction. Contact the system manager (administrator) for the details ☞ e-Manual → Security → Specifying the Setting for Department ID Management → Specifying Whether or Not to Receive Jobs from an Unknown ID
#703	Problem	The image region in the memory is full. Cannot write.
	Action 1	Wait until other TX jobs are completed before resending.
	Action 2	Delete the documents saved in the memory. If it still does not work, please turn the machine OFF and then ON again.
	Action 3	Split the document into smaller subsets and send it.
#752	Problem 1	The SMTP server name setting is incorrect.
	Action	Select the appropriate SMTP server name. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Setting the Machine to Be Able To Send Scanned Documents → Configuring the Send to E-mail Settings
	Problem 2	The domain name setting is incorrect.
	Action	Select the appropriate domain name. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Additional Network Settings → Setting IPv6 DNS
	Problem 3	The network is not connected.
	Action	Check with your network administrator to make sure that the network is operating normally.
#753	Problem	TCP/IP errors occur when sending files or e-mails. (socket and select errors, etc.)
	Action	Make sure that the network cable connector between the machine and the computer is plugged in securely.

#755	Problem 1	Cannot send because TCP/IP is not running properly.
	Action	Check <TCP/IP Settings>. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings
	Problem 2	The IP address is not set.
	Action	Enter the IP address. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Setting the IP Address
	Problem 3	When the machine was started up, IP addresses were not assigned by either DHCP, RARP or BOOTP.
	Action	After the machine is turned ON, the machine cannot communicate with the network until the time specified in <Startup Settings> has elapsed. Wait a few seconds before resending. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Additional Network Settings → Specifying a Delay Before Establishing the Network Connection
#801	Problem 1	Whenever it communicates with the SMTP server in order to send e-mail, a timeout caused by the mail server side occurs.
	Action	Check to make sure the SMTP is operating normally. Check the network status.
	Problem 2	During SMTP connection, an error is returned from the SMTP server.
	Action	Recheck your SMTP server settings.
	Problem 3	The destination setting is not correct.
	Action	Check the destination settings.
	Problem 4	When sending to a file server, an error caused by the server side occurs.
	Action	Check to make sure the file server is operating normally.
#802	Problem	The SMTP server name setting is incorrect.
	Action	Select the appropriate SMTP server name. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Setting the Machine to Be Able To Send Scanned Documents → Configuring the Send to E-mail Settings
#804	Problem	No access privileges to folder.
	Action	Make sure that the user name and password that is registered for the destination matches the user account (user name and password) that is registered in the computer (file server).
#806	Problem 1	When sending to a file server, the specified user name and password are incorrect.
	Action	Make sure that the user name and password that is registered for the destination matches the user account (user name and password) that is registered in the computer (file server).
	Problem 2	When sending e-mail, the specified destination is incorrect.
	Action	Check the registered e-mail destination settings.
#810	Problem	While connecting to the POP server, an error is returned from the POP server.
	Action 1	Check to see if the POP server address is entered correctly.
	Action 2	Check with your network administrator to make sure that the mail server is operating normally and that the network is operating normally.
#812	Problem	The POP password setting is incorrect.
	Action	Enter the correct POP password. Check the POP password in the settings notification documentation, etc. issued by the contracted provider, or ask the network administrator.
#813	Problem	The POP login name setting is incorrect.
	Action	Recheck your POP login name setting.
#822	Problem	The job cannot be printed due to incorrect image format.
	Action	Repeat the operation.
#839	Problem	The user name and password setting used for SMTP authentication is incorrect.
	Action	Set the user name and password correctly. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Setting the Machine to Be Able To Send Scanned Documents → Configuring the Send to E-mail Settings
#846	Problem	The error has occurred during the POP authentication.
	Action	Check the settings, and then repeat the operation. ☞ e-Manual → Network Settings → Setting the Machine to Be Able To Send Scanned Documents → Configuring the Send to E-mail Settings
#852	Problem	The error has occurred by shutting down the power switch while processing jobs.
	Action	Check the settings, and then repeat the operation.

#853	Problem 1	The job was not able to be processed due to the reason why it was canceled from an application or operating system while the print data was being sent to this machine from a computer etc.
	Action	Check the settings, and then repeat the operation.
	Problem 2	While performing the secure printing, the job has been canceled for running out of time to process.
	Action	Start over the job as necessary.
	Problem 3	The job using the secure printing has been sent when <Secure Print Settings> is turned <Off>.
	Action	Set <Secure Print Settings> to <On>. Or send the job without the secure printing. ☞ e-Manual → Security → Entering PIN for Printing (Secure Printing) → Setting Secure Printing
#861	Problem 1	Cannot print because the print data was received from another printer driver.
	Action	Print the data again from the printer driver for the machine.
	Problem 2	Printing cannot be performed because print data is broken.
	Action	Repeat the operation.
#863	Problem	A process problem in the printer has occurred, and the machine does not operate properly.
	Action	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for more than 10 seconds, and then turn it ON again. If the problem is not solved, turn OFF the main power switch, disconnect the power cord, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.
#995	Problem	A document waiting to be sent or received has been canceled.
	Action	Try to send or receive the document again.

When <Incorrect Size/Setting> Appears

This message appears when the paper size loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) does not match the size specified in <Drawer 1>, <Drawer 2>, or <Multi-Purpose Tray> in the <Paper Settings> menu. When this message appears, follow the steps in the procedure below.
※ Cassette 2 (optional) can be used only for MF8380Cdw.

NOTE

Ignore the message and proceed to print

You can print on paper currently set in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) if you press [OK] to ignore the message. Note that this may cause unexpected print results, for example, a part of the image may not be printed at all.

Changing the paper size in the <Paper Settings> menu to match the size loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot)

Cancel the job and refer to "For the Paper Cassette" (→P.2-18), to change the paper size in <Paper Settings> menu.

IMPORTANT

When printing from the printer driver

Make sure that the paper size specified in the printer driver also matches the size loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot).

Loading the paper size specified in the <Paper Settings> menu

See "Loading Paper" (→P.2-9) and load the size specified in the <Paper Settings> menu.

Printing from the multi-purpose tray/manual feed slot

When <Register Default Set.> is set to <Off> for the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot), load paper in the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot), and then specify the size of the loaded paper correctly.

● Troubleshooting

If a problem occurs while the machine is in use, try the actions suggested in this section before contacting technical support

Check the Following First

Is the power switched ON?

Make sure that the power cord is securely plugged into the machine and into the wall outlet.

Make sure that electricity is supplied from the power cord.
Use another power cord or check to see if the cord is broken using a voltmeter.

Turn ON the power switch.

If this works, proceed to ▷ "Has the power switch been just turned ON?"

Has the power switch been just turned ON?

Wait a few moments until the machine starts and warms up.

If this works

Is the machine in the sleep mode?

Press [ⓘ] (Energy Saver) on the operation panel to return from the sleep mode.

If this works

Are the settings properly configured?

If the machine makes the error sound and does not start operating even after [ⓘ] (Color) or [ⓘ] (B&W) has been pressed, the settings may not have been configured properly. Check the configured settings.

Is the Error indicator on or blinking?

Make sure that paper is loaded properly in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot).
▷ "Loading Paper" (→P.2-9)

Check to see if there is a jam somewhere inside the machine.
▷ "Clearing Jams" (→P.9-2)

Turn OFF the power switch, wait 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.
After the problem has been solved, the Error indicator goes out and the screen returns to the standby mode. If the Error indicator keeps blinking, unplug the power cord and contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

If this works

Troubleshooting

Does a message appear on the screen?

If an error message appears on the screen, see the following section and try the appropriate action.
▶ "Onscreen Message" (→P.9-9)
Print the transmission management report to see if the report shows any errors.
☞ e-Manual → Basic Operation → Printing the List → Printing a Communication Management Report

If this works

Is the telephone line connected or configured properly?

Make sure that the telephone cable is properly connected. Make sure that the cables for the telephone line jack and external telephone jack on the back of the machine are not connected inversely.
☞ e-Manual → Setting Up the Machine → Specifying Initial Settings for the Fax Functions and Connecting the Telephone Cable

Make sure that the line type (dial or push) specified in the menu matches the type of line connected to the machine.
▶ "Select Line Type" (→P.6-24)

Make sure that the telephone line is not receiving interference from nearby devices such as a microwave oven. This may affect the status of the telephone line.

If You Cannot Solve a Problem

See "Troubleshooting" in the e-Manual, then solve the problem.

Troubleshooting

When a Power Failure Occurs

The machine cannot be used while the power supply is cut off.

When there is a power failure, you can or cannot perform the following fax operations.
- You cannot send or receive faxes.
- You may not be able to make a call using the external telephone, depending on your telephone system.
- You may be able to answer a call using the external telephone, depending on your telephone system.

IMPORTANT

To save documents in memory when the power supply is cut off

If the power is lost due to a power failure or the power cord is accidentally unplugged, data can be stored in memory for approximately five minutes so you can back it up.

NOTE

Charging the built-in battery

It takes approximately five hours to completely charge the built-in battery after the machine is turned ON.
If the built-in battery is not charged enough, data may not be saved properly in the memory.

Printing Results Are Not Good

> **NOTE** --
>
> **To contact your local authorized Canon dealer**
>
> When a problem occurs that is not suggested in this manual or the e-Manual, or a problem persists if you follow the instructions, or you cannot determine the nature of the problem, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
>
> --

Paper Curls

Try one of the following to solve the problem.

<Cause 1> Damp paper is used.

Solution	Replace the paper stack with new unopened one. ▶ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)

<Cause 2> The paper type loaded is not appropriate.

Solution 1	Make sure that the number of sheets or the paper type loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) meets the paper specifications. ▶ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)
Solution 2	Set <Special Mode P> to <On>. See "Reducing Paper Curl (Special Mode P)" in the e-Manual.

Troubleshooting

Paper Creases

Try one of the following to solve the problem.

<Cause 1> The paper stack is not loaded correctly.

Solution	Load the paper stack is not loaded correctly. ▷ "Loading Paper" (→P.2-9)

<Cause 2> Damp paper is used.

Solution	Replace the paper stack with new unopened one. ▷ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)

<Cause 3> The paper type loaded is not appropriate.

Solution	Make sure that the number of sheets or the paper type loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) meets the paper specifications. ▷ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)

<Cause 4> There is a foreign object inside the machine.

Solution	Remove the foreign object from the machine.

Vertical Streaks Appear on the Output

Perform following procedure.

<Cause> Due to the paper type or usage conditions, vertical streaks appear on the output.

Solution	Replace the paper stack with new unopened one. ▷ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)

Toner Smudges and Spatters Appear around Text and Images

Perform following procedure.

<Cause> The paper type loaded is not appropriate.

Solution	Make sure that the number of sheets or the paper type loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot) meets the paper specifications. ▷"Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)

The Bottom Edge of Paper or Following Paper Has Smudge Marks

Perform following procedure.

<Cause> A document with no margins was printed.

Solution 1	Data is printed with a margin of 1/4" (5 mm) (3/8" (10 mm) for envelopes). Provide a margin around the data. ▷"Printable Area" (→P.2-8)
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Setting]. 3. Set [Expand Print Region and Print] to [Off].

Printing Is Faded

Perform following procedure.

<Cause> The toner cartridges have reached the end of their life.

Solution	Check the toner cartridges status and replace the toner cartridges of the colors that have reached the end of their life. ▷"Checking the Toner Level" (→P.8-7) ▷"Replacing the Toner Cartridges" (→P.8-7)

Data Is Printed Diagonally

Try one of the following to solve the problem.

<Cause 1> Printed on curled paper.

Solution	Flatten curls and print again.

<Cause 2> The positions of the paper guides does not fit to paper.

Solution	Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, paper is not fed properly.

<Cause 3> Printing from the multi-purpose tray (manual feed slot)

Solution	Load paper in the paper cassette.

A Portion of the Page Is Not Printed

Perform one of the following solutions according to the cause.

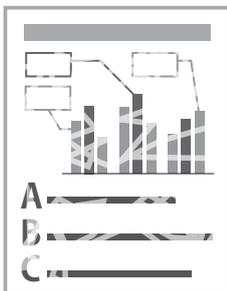### <Cause> A document with no margins was printed.

Solution 1	Data is printed with a margin of 1/4" (5 mm) (3/8" (10 mm) for envelopes). Provide a margin around the data. "Printable Area" (→P.2-8)
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Setting]. 3. Set [Expand Print Region and Print] to [Off].

When a Problem Cannot Be Resolved

Customer Support (U.S.A.)

If you cannot solve a problem by referring to the information in this chapter, contact the Canon Customer Care Center at 1-800-OK-CANON, Monday through Friday, between 8:00 A.M. and 8:00 P.M. EST. On-line support is available 24 hours a day at http://www.canontechsupport.com.

Please have the following information ready when contacting the Canon Customer Care Center:
- Product name (Color imageCLASS MF8380Cdw/MF8080Cw)
- Serial number (a character string of 3 letters and a 5-digit number, indicated on the label located inside the machine's front cover)

MF8380Cdw

Serial Number

MF8080Cw

Serial Number

- Place of purchase
- Nature of the problem
- Steps you have taken to solve the problem and the results

⚠ WARNING

If the machine makes strange noises or emits smoke or an odd odor

Turn OFF the power switch immediately, disconnect the power cord, and contact the Canon Customer Care Center. Do not attempt to disassemble or repair the machine yourself.

🖐 IMPORTANT

If you attempt to fix the machine yourself

It may void the limited warranty.

Customer Support (Canada)

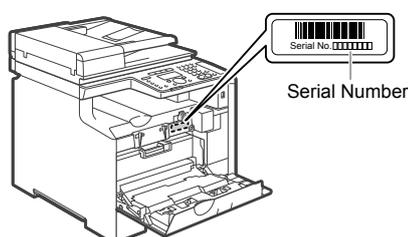Canon Canada Inc., offers a full range of customer technical support options*:

* Available support options are subject to change without notice.

- To perform step-by-step troubleshooting, send e-mail to technical support, download drivers or support documents, or view answers to frequently asked questions, visit http://www.canon.ca/
- Free live technical support is available from 9 A.M. to 8 P.M. EST, Monday through Friday (excluding holidays), for products still under warranty 1-800-OK-CANON
- To find the location of the authorized service facility nearest you, visit http://www.canon.ca/ or call 1- 800-OK-CANON.
- If the problem cannot be corrected via these technical support options, repair options are available from the technical support personnel via the website at http://www.canon.ca/

Please have the following information ready when contacting the Canon Customer Care Center:
- Product name (Color imageCLASS MF8380Cdw/MF8080Cw)
- Serial number (a character string of 3 letters and a 5-digit number, indicated on the label located inside the machine's front cover)

MF8380Cdw

Serial Number

MF8080Cw

Serial Number

- Place of purchase
- Nature of problem
- Steps you have taken to solve the problem and the results

⚠ WARNING

If the machine makes strange noises or emits smoke or an odd odor

Turn OFF the power switch immediately, disconnect the power cord, and contact the Canon Customer Care Center. Do not attempt to disassemble or repair the machine yourself.

🤚 IMPORTANT

If you attempt to fix the machine yourself

It may void the limited warranty.

Chapter **10**

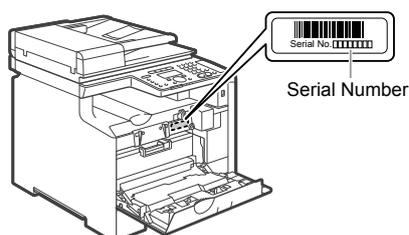# Registering/Setting the Various Functions

You can set or change machine functions from the setting menu according to your purpose.

Setting Menu List

Printing a User Data List

To see the contents of current settings, print out user's data list.

Keys to be used for this operation

Report

▲▼◄► OK

1 Press [○] (Report).

2 Select <Print Reports> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Reports
 Reports Settings
 Print Reports
```

3 Select <User Data List> using [▲] or [▼] and press [OK].

```
Print Report Lists
 Address Book List
 User Data List
 Communication Manage...
```

4 Make sure that paper is loaded in the paper source and press [OK].

Load the displayed paper size.

```
Supported Paper:
Size: A4, LTR
Type: Pln, Rec, Clr
       OK
```

5 Select <Yes> using [◄] and press [OK].

Printing starts.

```
Print User Data
List?
   Yes       No
```

6 Press [○] (Report) to close <Print Report> screen.Lists> screen.

Contents of the Setting Menu

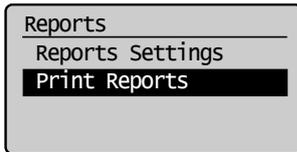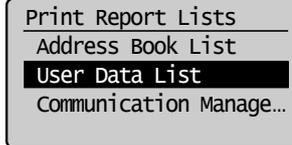| [Address Book] key	[Select Paper/Settings] key	[Menu] key	[Report] key
Register the following types of destination. - Favorites - Coded dialing - Group dialing	Register the size and type of the paper to be used. You can also register a custom paper size.	Configure the machine settings. You can perform adjustment and cleaning.	You can specify the settings for various report output conditions and output a report.

● Viewing the Route Map

This area represents the first hierarchy in the menu.

Timer Settings

·Settings marked with*² cannot be imported or exported via the Remote UI.

Time & Date Settings | P.1-14

Date Display Type

YYYY MM/DD
MM/DD/YYYY
DD/MM YYYY

This area represents hierarchies for "setting values." The setting values with the gray background or of the boldface represents the default settings.

These represents reference areas in this manual. For the items with the icon, see the e-Manual.

This area represents hierarchies for "setting item."

● Menu Operations

◄	Returns to the previous hierarchy.
►	Proceeds to the next hierarchy.
▲	Selects an upper item/setting value.
▼	Selects a lower item/setting value.
(OK)	Proceeds to the next hierarchy. Also, a setting value is determined, and an operation is performed. * When <Apply> appears in the screen, you need to select <Apply> and press [OK] after specifying the setting.
Back ○	Returns to the previous hierarchy.
Reset ⌀	Resets the settings. (Resets the copy/scan/fax/USB direct print mode.)

Press [(⊛)] (Menu) to exit the menu screen and return to the default screen.

Registering/Setting the Various Functions

Address Book

❶ Press [FAX] or [SCAN].　　❷ Press [Address Book].
❸ The address book is displayed.　　❹ Press [◀] to select [ ], and then press [OK].

Keys to be used for this operation

Coded Dial	P.5-6

Fax

Name		Max 16 characters
Destination		Max 40

Set Details

ECM TX	Off
	On

Speed	**33600 bps**
	14400 bps
	9600 bps
	4800 bps

Long Distance	**Domestic**
	International (1)
	International (2)
	International (3)

Coded Dial:Registration No.

E-Mail

Name	Max 16 characters
Destination	Max 120 characters

Coded Dial:Registration No.

Group

Name	Max 16 characters
Destination	Select from the Coded Dial/Favorites

Coded Dial:Registration No.

Favorites	P.5-3

Fax

Name		Max 16 characters
Destination		Max 40

Set Details

ECM TX	Off
	On

Speed	**33600 bps**
	14400 bps
	9600 bps
	4800 bps

Long Distance	**Domestic**
	International (1)
	International (2)
	International (3)

E-Mail

Name	Max 16 characters
Destination	Max 120 characters

Group

Name	Max 16 characters
Destination	Select from the Coded Dial/Favorites

Paper Settings

Press [Select Paper/Settings].

Keys to be used for this operation

▷ "Setting the Paper Size and Type" (P. 2-18)

Menu

❶ Press [Menu].　　❷ The setting menu is displayed.

Keys to be used for this operation

Network Settings

・Settings or values with "*1" mark appear only in MF8380Cdw.

Select Wired/Wireless LAN		**Wired LAN**
		Wireless LAN

Wireless LAN Settings

WPS Push Button Mode
WPS PIN Code Mode

SSID Settings	Select Access Point, Manual Settings
Wireless LAN Information	MAC Address, Wireless LAN Status, Latest Error Information, Channel, SSID Settings, Security Settings

TCP/IP Settings

IPv4 Settings

IP Address Settings

Auto Obtain

Select Protocol	Off
	DHCP
	BOOTP
	RARP

Auto IP	Off
	On

Manual Obtain

IP Address	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	0.0.0.0

View Settings

- Auto Obtain
- IP Address
- Subnet Mask
- Gateway Address

PING Command

DNS Settings

DNS Server Settings

Primary DNS Server	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server	0.0.0.0

DNS Host Name/Domain Name Settings

- Host Name
- Domain Name

DNS Dynamic Update Settings

Off	
On	DNS Dynamic Updt. Time: 0 – **24** – 48 (hr.)

mDNS Settings

Off	
On	mDNS Name

DHCP Option Settings

- Acquire Host Name: Off, **On**
- DNS Dynamic Update: **Off**, On

IPv6 Settings

Use IPv6	**Off**
	On
	View Settings

Stateless Address Settings	Off
	On
	View Settings

Use DHCPv6	**Off**
	On
	View Settings

DNS Settings

DNS Host Name/Domain Name Settings

Registering/Setting the Various Functions

Use IPv4 Host/Domain
- Off
  - Host Name
  - Domain Name
- **On**

DNS Dynamic Update Settings
- **Off**
- On
  - Register Manual Address: **Off**, On
  - Register Stateful Address: **Off**, On
  - Register Stateless Address: **Off**, On
  - DNS Dynamic Update Time: 0 to **24** to 48 (hr.)

mDNS Settings
- Off
- **On**
  - Use IPv4 Name for mDNS: Off (mDNS Name), **On**

WINS Settings
- WINS Resolution: **Off**, On (WINS Server Address: 0.0.0.0)
- Scope ID

LPD Settings
- Off
- **On**

RAW Settings
- Off
- **On**

WSD Settings
- WSD Print Settings:
  - Use WSD Print: Off, **On**
  - Use WSD Browsing: Off, **On**
- WSD Scan Settings:
  - Use WSD Scan: **Off**, On
  - Use Computer Scan: **Off**, On
- Use Multicast Discovery:
  - Off
  - **On**

Use HTTP
- Off
- **On**

Port Number Settings
- LPD: 1 to **515** to 65535
- RAW: 1 to **9100** to 65535
- HTTP: 1 to **80** to 65535
- POP3 RX*[1]: 1 to **110** to 65535
- SMTP TX*[1]: 1 to **25** to 65535
- SNMP: 1 to **161** to 65535
- WSD Search: 1 to **3702** to 65535

MTU Size
- 1300, 1400, **1500**

SNMP Settings
- SNMPv1 Settings
  - Off
  - **On**
    - Community Name 1: **Public**
    - Community Name 2: Not Set
    - MIB Access Permission 1: **Read Only**, Read/Write
    - MIB Access Permission 2: **Read Only**, Read/Write
    - Dedicated Community Settings: Off, **Read/Write**, Read Only
- SNMPv3 Settings
  - **Off**
  - On
- Printer Management Information From Host
  - **Off**
  - On

Dedicated Port Settings
- Off
- **On**

Startup Settings
- **0** to 300 (sec.)

Ethernet Driver Settings
- Auto Detect
  - Off
    - Communication Mode: Half Duplex, **Full Duplex**
    - Ethernet Type: 10 Base-T, **100 Base-TX**
  - **On**
- MAC Address

IEEE802.1X Settings
- **Off**
- On

Initialize Network Settings

Preferences

Sound Volume Control

Fax Tone
- Off
- **On**
  - Fax Volume: **1** to 3

Ring Tone
- Off
- **On**
  - Ring Tone Volume: **1** to 3

TX Done Tone
- Off
- **On**
  - TX Done Volume: **1** to 3
- Only When Error Occurs
  - TX Done Volume: **1** to 3

RX Done Tone
- Off
- **On**
  - RX Done Volume: **1** to 3
- Only When Error Occurs
  - RX Done Volume: **1** to 3

Scanning Done Tone
- Off
- **On**
  - Scanning Done Volume: **1** to 3
- Only When Error Occurs
  - Scanning Done Volume: **1** to 3

Entry Tone
- Off
- **On**

Invalid Entry Tone
- **Off**
- On

Restock Supplies Tone
- **Off**
- On

Warning Tone
- Off
- **On**

Job Done Tone
- Off
- **On**

Energy Saver Alert
- **Off**
- On

Display Settings

Select Default Screen
- **Copy**
- Fax
- Scan
- USB Direct Print

Language
- **English**
- French
- Spanish
- Portuguese

Remote UI Language
- **English**
- French
- Spanish
- Portuguese

Brightness
- –4 to **0**

Contrast
- –3 to **0** to +3

Invert Screen Colors
- **Off**
- On

mm/Inch Entry Switch
- mm
- **Inch**

Gram/Pound Switch
- Gram
- **Pound**

Message Display Time
- 1 to **2** to 5 (seconds)

Scrolling Speed
- Slow
- **Normal**
- Fast

Cursor Movement
- **Auto**
- Manual

Registering/Setting the Various Functions

10-4

Timer Settings

•Settings marked with *2 cannot be imported or exported via the Remote UI.

Time & Date Settings P.1-14

- Date Display Type
  - YYYY MM/DD
  - **MM/DD/YYYY**
  - DD/MM YYYY
- 12/24 Hour Clock
  - **12 Hour (AM/PM)**
  - 24 Hour
- Current Time Settings*2
- Time Zone Settings
  - GMT-12:00 to **GMT-5:00** to GMT+12:00
- Daylight Savings
  - **Off**
  - On
    - Start (M/W/D)
    - End (M/W/D)

Sleep Timer P.1-13
- MF8380Cdw: **10** to 240 (minutes)
- MF8080Cw: **20** to 240 (minutes)

Auto Reset Timer
- 0=Off
- 1 to **2** to 9 (minutes)

Screen After Auto Reset
- **Default Screen**
- Selected Screen

Auto Offline Time
- 0=Off
- 1 to **5** to 60 (minutes)

Common Settings

•Settings or values with "*1" mark appear only in MF8380Cdw.
•Settings or values with "*3" mark may not appear depending on the availability of the optional accessories.

Auto Drawer Selection

- Copy
  - Multi-Purpose Tray
    - **OFF**
    - ON
  - Drawer 1
    - OFF
    - **ON**
  - Drawer 2*3
    - OFF
    - **ON**
- Printer
  - Drawer 1
    - OFF
    - **ON**
  - Drawer 2*3
    - OFF
    - **ON**
- Fax
  - Multi-Purpose Tray
    - **OFF**
    - ON
  - Drawer 1
    - OFF
    - **ON**
  - Drawer 2*3
    - OFF
    - **ON**
- Other
  - Multi-Purpose Tray
    - **OFF**
    - ON
  - Drawer 1
    - OFF
    - **ON**
  - Drawer 2*3
    - OFF
    - **ON**

Switch Paper Feed Method*1 P.2-21
- Multi-Purpose Tray
  - **Print Speed Priority**
  - Print Side Priority
- Drawer 1
  - **Print Speed Priority**
  - Print Side Priority
- Drawer 2*3
  - **Print Speed Priority**

Copy Settings

Change Defaults P.3-14

Fax Settings

•Settings marked with "*2" cannot be imported or exported via the Remote UI.
•Settings or values with "*4" mark appear only in MF8380Cdw

Basic Settings P.6-23
- Register Unit Telephone Number
- Select Line Type
  - Pulse, **Tone**
- Off-Hook Alarm
  - **Off**
  - On
    - Off-Hook Alarm Volume: **1** to 3

TX Function Settings P.6-23
- Change Defaults
- Register Unit Name (Fax)
- ECM TX
  - Off
  - **On**
- Pause Time
  - 1 to **2** to 15 (seconds)
- Auto Redial
  - Off
  - **On**
    - Redial Times
      - 1 to **2** to 10 (times)
    - Redial Interval
      - **2** to 99 (minutes)
    - Redial When Err Occurs
      - Off
      - **On**
- Sender ID
  - Off
  - **On**
    - Print Location
      - On Image
      - **Above Image**
    - Mark No. as: TEL/FAX
      - **FAX**
      - TEL
- Check Dial Tone Before Sending
  - **Off**
  - On

RX Function Settings P.6-26
- ECM RX
  - Off
  - **On**
- Incoming Ring
  - Off
  - **On**
    - Ring Times: 1 to **2** to 99 (times)
- Remote RX
  - Off
  - **On**
    - Remote RX ID: 00 to **25** to 99
- Auto RX Switch
  - **Off**
  - On
    - Incoming Ring Time: 1 to **15** to 99 (seconds)

RX Print Settings P.6-26
- 2-Sided Printing*4
  - **Off**
  - On
- Reduce RX Size
  - Off
  - **On**
    - Reduction Ratio: **Auto**, 97, 95, 90, 75 (%)
    - Reduction Method: Vertical/Horizontal, **Vertical Only**
- RX Page Footer
  - **Off**
  - On
- Continue Printing When Toner Is Low
  - **Off**
  - On

Fax Setup Guide*2

Scan Settings

•Settings or values with "*1" mark appear only in MF8380Cdw.
•Settings marked with "*2" cannot be imported or exported via the Remote UI.

TX Function Settings*1
- Change Defaults
  - E-Mail
  - Windows (SMB)
- Register Unit Name (E-Mail)

Memory Media Settings
- Change Defaults

Output File Image Settings
- Color Send Gamma Value
  - Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, **Gamma 1.8**, Gamma 2.2
- PDF (Compact) Image Level*1
  - Image Quality in Text/Photo, Photo Mode: Data Size Priority, **Normal**, Image Quality Priority
  - Image Quality in Text Mode: Data Size Priority, **Normal**, Image Quality Priority

Shortcut Key Settings*2 P.7-3
- Register
- Confirm Destination

USB Direct Print Settings

Change Defaults	🔧	
File Sort Default Settings	🔧	**Name (Ascending)**, Name (Descending), Date/Time (Ascending), Date/Time (Descending)
File Name Format	🔧	Short File Name, **Long File Name**

Printer Settings

Paper Size Override	🔧	**Off**
		On

Adjustment/Maintenance

・Settings or values with "*3" mark may not appear depending on the availability of the optional accessories.

Auto Gradation Adjustment	🔧	
Full Adjustment		
Quick Adjustment		**Off**
Copy Image Adjustment		On

Auto Adjustment Settings	🔧	
Auto Adjust Image Regularly		**Off**
		On
Correct Color Mismatch when turned ON		**Off**
		On

Correct Print Color Mismatch	🔧	
Black Text Processing for Color	🔧	
Feeder		-3 to **0** to +3
Platen Glass		-3 to **0** to +3

Special Processing	🔧	
Special Paper Processing		
Manual 2-Sided Settings		Multi-Purpose Tray: **Off**, On Drawer 1: **Off**, On Drawer 2*3: **Off**, On
Rough Paper Settings		Multi-Purpose Tray: **Off**, On Drawer 1: **Off**, On Drawer 2*3: **Off**, On
Envelope Cling Prevention		**Off**
		On
Envelope Switch		**Envelope 1**
		Envelope 2
Special Mode P		**Off**
		On

Clean Fixing Unit	P.8-2
Clean ITB	P.8-3
Clean Feeder	P.8-4

Continues to the upper right

System Settings

・Settings or values with "*1" mark appear only in MF8380Cdw.
・Settings marked with "*2" cannot be imported or exported via the Remote UI.
・Settings or values with "*5" mark appear only in MF8380Cdw.

Network Settings	🔧	

System Manager Information Settings	🔧	
System Manager ID: Up to seven digits		
System Manager PIN: Up to seven digits		
System Manager Name: Up to 32 characters		

Device Information Settings	🔧	
Device Name: Up to 32 characters		
Location: Up to 32 characters		

Dept. ID Management On/Off		**Off**
		On

Security Settings	🔧	
Use SSL		**Off**
		On
IPv4 Address Filter		
Send Filter		**Off**
		On
Receive Filter		**Off**
		On
IPv6 Address Filter		
Send Filter		**Off**
		On
Receive Filter		**Off**
		On
MAC Address Filter		
Send Filter		**Off**
		On
Receive Filter		**Off**
		On

Communication Management Settings*1	P.6-28	
Fax Settings		TX Start Speed: **33600 bps**, 14400 bps, 9600 bps, 7200 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps
		RX Start Speed: **33600 bps**, 14400 bps, 9600 bps, 7200 bps, 4800 bps, 2400 bps
Memory Lock Settings		**Off**
		On
Memory Lock PIN		
Print Report		Off
		On
Memory Lock Time		**Off**
		On - Memory Lock Start Time - Memory Lock End Time

Select Country/Region*2	🔧	**United States (US)**, Canada (CA), Brazil (BR), Mexico (MX), Other

Forwarding Settings*2	P.6-16	**Off**
		On

Store/Print When Fowarding	P.6-17	
Print Images		Off, **On**, Only When Error Occurs
Store Images in Memory		**Do Not Store**, Only When Error Occurs

Remote UI On/Off*2	🔧	Off
		On

Restrict TX Function	P.6-28	
Address Book PIN		
Restrict New Destinations		**Off**
		On
Allow Fax Driver TX		Off
		On
Restrict History TX		**Off**
		On
Fax No. Confirmation Re-Entry		**Off**
		On
Restrict Sequential Broadcast		**Off**
		Confirm Sequential Broadcast
		Reject Sequential Broadcast

Continues to the next page

| Display Job History | Off |
| | **On** |

| USB Device On/Off | Off |
| | **On** |

| Memory Media Storage On/Off | Off |
| | **On** |

| USB Direct Print On/Off | Off |
| | **On** |

Secure Print Settings*1	Off
	On
	Secure Print Del. Time: 10 to **30** to 240 (min.)

Select PDL (Plug-n-Play)

| Network | FAX, **UFRII LT**, UFRII LT (XPS) |
| USB | **UFRII LT**, UFRII LT (XPS) |

Update Firmware*2

Initialize Key and Certificate*2

Initialize Address Book*2

Initialize System Settings*2

- Network Settings
- System Manager Information Settings
- Device Information Settings
- Dept. ID Management On/Off
- Security Settings
- Communication Management Settings
- Forwarding Settings
- Store/Print When Fowarding
- Remote UI On/Off
- Restrict TX Function
- Display Job History
- USB Device On/Off
- Memory Media Storage On/Off
- USB Direct Print On/Off
- Secure Print Settings*1
- Select PDL (Plug-n-Play)
- Initialize All

Initialize Menu

- Preferences
- Timer Settings
- Common Settings
- Copy Settings
- Fax Settings
- Scan Settings
- USB Direct Print Settings
- Printer Settings
- Initialize All

Reports

<How to display>
❶ Press [Report].
❷ The report output menu is displayed.

Keys to be used for this operation

Reports Settings

TX Result Report	Off
	On
	Only When Error Occurs

Communication Management Report

| Auto Print (40 Transmissions) | Off |
| | **On** |

| Separate TX/RX | **Off** |
| | On |

RX Result Report	**Off**
	On
	Only When Error Occurs

Print Reports

Address Book List	Coded Dial
	Favorites
	Group

User Data List

System Manager Data List

Communication Management Report

Dept. ID Management Report

Registering/Setting the Various Functions

Chapter **11**

Appendix

This section describes the specifications of the machine and information for Macintosh users.

Main Specifications

Machine Specifications

Machine Specifications	
Type	Personal Desktop
Power Supply	120 to 127 V, 60 Hz (Power requirements differ depending on the country in which you purchased the product.)
Power Consumption	• MF8380Cdw Maximum: 1,200 W or less Average consumption during standby mode: Approx. 23 W Average consumption during sleep mode: Approx. 1.4 W (Approx. 2.2 W by Wireless Connections) When the main power switch is turned OFF: 0.5 W or less • MF8080Cw Maximum: 900 W or less Average consumption during standby mode: Approx. 15 W Average consumption during sleep mode: Approx. 2.1 W (Approx. 2.5 W by Wireless Connections) When the main power switch is turned OFF: 0 W
Warm-up Time	• MF8380Cdw 23 seconds or less* (Temperature: 68 °F (20 °C), humidity: 65% RH ; from when the machine is turned ON using the main power switch to when the standby screen is displayed) • MF8080Cw 30 seconds or less* (Temperature: 68 °F (20 °C), humidity: 65% RH ; from when the machine is turned ON using the main power switch to when the standby screen is displayed) * Warm-up time may vary depending on conditions of the installation environment.
Weight	• MF8380Cdw Main unit (including toner cartridge): Approx. 68.3 lb (31 kg) • MF8080Cw Main unit (including toner cartridge): Approx. 57.3 lb (26 kg)
Dimensions (W x L x H)	• MF8380Cdw - In the normal state 17" x 19 1/8" x 18 7/8" (430 mm x 484 mm x 479 mm) - When the optional Cassette Feeding Unit-V1 is installed 17" x 19 1/8" x 22 7/8" (430 mm x 484 mm x 579 mm) • MF8080Cw 17" x 19 1/8" x 16 7/8" (430 mm x 484 mm x 429 mm)
Installation Space (W x L x H)	• MF8380Cdw - In the normal state 26 1/2" x 52 1/4" x 33 1/2" (674 mm x 1,327 mm x 851 mm) - When the optional Cassette Feeding Unit-V1 is installed 26 3/4" x 52 1/4" x 37 1/2" (679 mm x 1,327 mm x 951 mm) • MF8080Cw 26 1/2" x 48 3/8" x 31 1/2" (674 mm x 1,229 mm x 801 mm)

Machine Specifications	
Environmental Conditions	Temperature: 50 to 86°F (10 to 30°C) Humidity: 20% to 80% RH (no condensation)
Color Compatibility	Full Color
Gradation	256 gradations
Acceptable Documents	▶ "Supported Document Types" (→P.2-2)
Acceptable Paper Stock	▶ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)
Printable Range	▶ "Printable Area" (→P.2-8)
Scan Range	▶ "Scan Area" (→P.2-2)

Wireless LAN Specification

Wireless LAN Specification	
Standard	IEEE802.11g/IEEE802.11b/IEEE 802.11n*
Transmission Scheme	DS-SS System/OFDM System
Frequency Range	2412 to 2472 MHz
Data Transmission Rate	IEEE802.11g 6/9/12/18/24/36/48/54 Mbps IEEE802.11b 1/2/5.5/11 Mbps IEEE 802.11n SGI Invalidated 20 MHz : 6.5/13/19.5/26/39/52/58.5/65 Mbps SGI Validated 20 MHz : 7.2/14.4/21.7/28.9/43.3/57.8/72.2 Mbps SGI Invalidated 40 MHz : 13.5/27/40.5/81/108/121.5/135 Mbps SGI Validated 40 MHz : 15/30/45/60/90/120/150 Mbps
Communication Mode	Infrastructure Mode
Security	WEP, WPA-PSK (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA2-PSK (TKIP/AES-CCMP)

* Connection can be established by using WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) or manually specifying the settings.

Copy Specifications

Copy Specifications	
Scan Resolution	• Text/Photo/Map (Speed) (Color): 300 dpi x 300 dpi • Text/Photo/Map, Text/Photo/Map (Speed) (B/W): 300 dpi x 600 dpi • Text/Photo/Map (Quality), Printed Image, Text: 600 dpi x 600 dpi
Output Resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi
Copy Ratio	• Direct 1:1 ± 1.0 % • Enlargement 1:4.00, 1:2.00, 1:1.29 • Reduction 1:0.78, 1:0.64, 1:0.50, 1:0.25 • Zoom 0.25 to 4.00, 1% increments
Copy Speed (Letter Plain Direct)*	• MF8380Cdw Color: 21 ppm B/W: 21 ppm • MF8080Cw Color: 8 ppm B/W: 12 ppm
Continuous Copying Capacity	Maximum 99 copies

Copy Specifications

Copy Specifications	
First Copy Time (Letter)	• MF8380Cdw Platen glass (Color): 16 seconds or less Platen glass (B/W): 16 seconds or less Feeder (Color): 17 seconds or less Feeder (B/W): 17 seconds or less • MF8080Cw Platen glass (Color): 29 seconds or less Platen glass (B/W): 23 seconds or less Feeder (Color): 29 seconds or less Feeder (B/W): 23 seconds or less

* The copy speed on Letter size plain paper on one-side printing is measured during continuous copying. Copy speeds vary depending on the paper type and size, as well as the paper feeding direction. Copy speeds on smaller paper sizes may be slower. Plus, the machine may experience downtime or decrease the copy speed in the middle of a continuous copy run to adjust the temperature inside the machine or maintain the optimal print quality.

Printer Specifications

Printer Specification	
Printing Method	Indirect electrostatic system (On-demand fixing)
Paper Capacity	• MF8380Cdw Multi-purpose tray: Approx 50 sheets (16 to 24 lb Bond (60 to 90 g/m²)) Paper cassette: Approx 250 sheets (16 to 24 lb Bond (60 to 90 g/m²)) Cassette Feeding Unit-V1 (optional): Approx 250 sheets (16 to 24 lb Bond (60 to 90 g/m²)) • MF8080Cw Manual feed slot: 1 sheet Paper cassette: Approx 150 sheets (16 to 24 lb (60 to 90 g/m²))
Output Tray Capacity (a fresh stack of Letter size paper)	Approx. 125 sheets (16 to 24 lb Bond (60 to 90 g/m²))*¹
Print Speed (Letter Plain Direct)*²	• MF8380Cdw (1-sided printing) Color: 21 ppm B/W: 21 ppm • MF8380Cdw (2-sided printing) Color: up to 10 ppm (pages per minute), 5 spm (sheets per minute) B/W: up to 10 ppm (pages per minute), 5 spm (sheets per minute) • MF8080Cw Color: 8 ppm B/W: 12 ppm
First Print Time (Letter)*³	• MF8380Cdw Color: 15 seconds or less B/W: 15 seconds or less • MF8080Cw Color: 28 seconds or less B/W: 22 seconds or less
Output Resolution	Equivalent to 600 dpi x 600 dpi
Gradation	256 gradations
Toner Cartridges	▶ "Replacing Toner Cartridges" (→P.8-5)

*¹ The actual paper capacity varies depending on the installation environment and paper type used.
*² The print speed on Letter size plain paper is measured during continuous printing. Print speeds vary depending on the paper type and size, as well as the paper feeding direction. Print speeds on smaller paper sizes may be slower. Plus, the machine may experience downtime or decrease the print speed in the middle of a continuous print run to adjust the temperature inside the machine or maintain the optimal print quality.
*³ May vary depending on the output environment.

Scanner Specifications

Scanner Specifications	
Type	Color scanner
Maximum Scan Size	• Platen glass: up to 8 1/2" x 11 5/8" (216 mm x 297 mm) • Feeder: up to 8 1/2" x 14" (216 mm x 356 mm)
Scan Resolution	• Optical resolution Platen glass: up to 600 x 600 dpi Feeder: up to 300 x 300 dpi • Software interpolation resolution 9600 dpi x 9600 dpi
Scan Speed (Letter, 300 x 600 dpi)*	• Color: 10 sheets/minute • Black and White: 20 sheets/minute
Host Interface	• 100Base-TX • 10Base-T • Hi-Speed USB • USB
Operating System	• Windows 2000/XP/Vista/7 • Mac OS 10.4.9 or later
Driver	• TWAIN • WIA 1.0 (Windows XP) • WIA 2.0 (Windows Vista/7) • ICA (Mac OS X 10.6.x)

* The communication time is not included.

Fax Specifications

Fax Specifications	
Line Used	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)*¹
Communication Mode	G3
Compression Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Modem Speed	33.6 Kbps Automatic Fallback
Transmission Speed	Approx. 3 seconds per page*² (ECM-JBIG, transmitting from the memory at 33.6 Kbps)
Sending from Memory/Receiving in Memory	Maximum approx. 512 pages*² (Total pages of transmission/reception)
Fax Resolution	• (Normal): 200 dpi x 100 dpi • (Fine): 200 dpi x 200 dpi • (Photo): 200 dpi x 200 dpi • (Superfine): 200 dpi x 400 dpi • (Ultrafine): 400 dpi x 400 dpi
Dialing	• Favorites dialing (19 destinations) • Coded dialing (181 destinations) • Group dialing (199 destinations) • Address book dialing • Regular dialing (with numeric keys) • Automatic redialing • Manual redialing • Sequential broadcast (210 destinations)

*¹ The Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) currently supports 28.8 Kbps modem speed or lower. Note that speeds can vary depending on the telephone line conditions.
*² Based on ITU-T (ITU Telecommunication Standardization Sector) Standard Chart No. 1, JBIG standard mode.

Appendix

11-3

Fax Specifications	
Receiving	• Automatic reception • Manual reception • Remote reception by telephone (Default ID: 25)
Reports	• Send Results • Transmission management report (By default, auto output every 40 destinations) • RX Results

Telephone Specifications

Telephone Specifications	
Telephone Type	External telephone/External telephone with the built-in answer function/Data modem

Transmission Specifications (MF8380Cdw Only)

Specification for File Server Transmission	
Communication Protocol	SMB (TCP/IP)
Data Format	PDF (Compact), PDF, JPEG, TIFF
Resolution	Resolutions for data formats are;

	JPEG	TIFF	PDF	PDF (Compact)
Black and White	300 dpi	300 dpi (MMR Compression)	300 dpi (MMR Compression)	Text: 300 dpi Background: 150 dpi
Color	300 dpi	300 dpi (JPEG Compression)	200 dpi (JPEG Compression)	Text: 300 dpi Background: 150 dpi

System Environment	Windows XP/Vista/7/Server 2003/Server 2008 Solaris Version 2.6 or later (with Samba 2.2 or later) Mac OS X (Mac OS X 10.7 is not supported.) Red Hat Linux 7.2 or later (with Samba 2.2 or later)
Interface	100BASE-TX, 10BASE-T
Color Mode	Color, Black/White
Inputted Image	Text, Text/Photo, Photo
Paper Size	LGL/LTR/STMT

Specification for E-mail Sending	
Communication Protocol	SMTP*
Data Format	PDF (Compact), PDF
Resolution	Resolutions for data formats are;

	PDF	PDF (Compact)
Black and White	300 dpi (MMR Compression)	Text: 300 dpi Background: 150 dpi
Color	200 dpi (JPEG Compression)	Text: 300 dpi Background: 150 dpi

System Environment	Windows XP/Vista/7/Server 2003/Server 2008 Solaris Version 2.6 or later (with Samba 2.2 or later) Mac OS X Red Hat Linux 7.2 or later (with Samba 2.2 or later)
Interface	100BASE-TX, 10BASE-T
Color Mode	Color, Black/White
Inputted Image	Text, Text/Photo, Photo
Paper Size	LGL/LTR/STMT

* POP3 is available to use only when authenticating before sending.

Cassette Feeding Unit-V1 (optional) (MF8380Cdw Only)

Cassette Feeding Unit-V1 (optional)	
Paper Capacity	250 sheets (16 to 24 lb Bond (60 to 90 g/m²))
Available Paper	▶ "Supported Paper Types" (→P.2-6)
Power Supply	From main unit
Dimensions (W x L x H)	17" x 17 7/8" x 4 1/8" (430 mm x 454 mm x 102 mm)
Weight	Approx. 8.8 lb (4 kg)

For Macintosh Users

In this manual, methods to operate in the Windows environment are explained as examples. To view how to use printer drivers or utilities for Macintosh, see the following driver guides (HTML files) or driver help systems.

Function	Object	Reference
Print function	Installing the Printer Driver	• Starter Guide • Mac UFR II Printer Driver Installation Guide
	Printing	• Mac UFR II Printer Driver Installation Guide
	Using each feature	• Printer Driver's Help
Fax function	Installing the Fax Driver	• Starter Guide • Mac Fax Driver Installation Guide
	Sending a fax	• Mac Fax Driver Installation Guide
	Using each feature	• Fax Driver's Help
Scan function	Installing the Scanner Driver	• Starter Guide • Mac Scanner Driver Guide
	Scanning (Setting the MF Toolbox or ScanGear MF)	• Mac Scanner Driver Guide

Displaying Driver Guides

Double-click the following PDF files from the [Documents] folder on the provided CD-ROM.

● **Mac UFR II Printer Driver Installation Guide**
→ [Documents] - [Print] - [Guide] - [index.html]

● **Mac Fax Driver Installation Guide**
→ [Documents] - [FAX] - [Guide] - [index.html]

● **Mac Scanner Driver Guide**
→ [Documents] - [Scan] - [Guide] - [index.html]

Displaying the Driver's Help System

You can use drivers' help systems after you install each driver.

● **Printer Driver's Help**
From the following panels in the [Print] dialog, click [?].
• [Basic] panel
• [Advanced] panel

● **Fax Driver's Help**
From the following panels in the [Print] dialog, click [?].
• [General Settings] panel
• [Special Features] panel
• [Cover Sheet] panel

Content of the e-Manual about Features that Are Unavailable on the Macintosh

Among the features explained in the e-Manual, the followings are unavailable on the Macintosh.

● **Installing or uninstalling the e-Manual**

Reference in the e- Manual	"Installing the e-Manual" "Uninstalling the e-Manual"

● **Accessory software**
• Presto! PageManager

Reference in the e- Manual	"User Software CD-ROM"

● **Using WSD network**

Reference in the e- Manual	"Installing the MF Drivers on the WSD Network "

● **Some print features**
<Examples>
• Operating in the print server environment
• Watermark printing
• PageComposer (Combining and printing multiple files)
• Changing the halftone
• Adjusting the gamma value
For information on the features that are available on the Macintosh, see the Printer Driver's help system.

Reference in the e- Manual	"Print "

● **Some scan features**
<Examples>
• Creating a "Searchable PDF"
• Combining multiple data into a single PDF file
For information on the features that are available on the Macintosh, see the Mac Scanner Driver Guide.

Reference in the e- Manual	"Scan"

Appendix

Index

Appendix

Appendix

R

S

T

U

W

Appendix

Canon

CANON INC.
30-2, Shimomaruko 3-chome, Ohta-ku, Tokyo 146-8501, Japan
CANON MARKETING JAPAN INC.
16-6, Konan 2-chome, Minato-ku, Tokyo 108-8011, Japan
CANON U.S.A., INC.
One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.
CANON EUROPA N.V.
Bovenkerkerweg, 59-61, 1185 XB Amstelveen, The Netherlands
CANON CHINA CO. LTD.
15F Jinbao Building No.89, Jinbao Street, Dongcheng District, Beijing 100005, PRC
CANON SINGAPORE PTE LTD
1 HarbourFront Avenue, #04-01 Keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632
CANON AUSTRALIA PTY LTD
1 Thomas Holt Drive, North Ryde, Sydney NSW 2113, Australia

CANON GLOBAL WORLDWIDE SITES
http://www.canon.com/

Serial No.	
Date of Purchase	